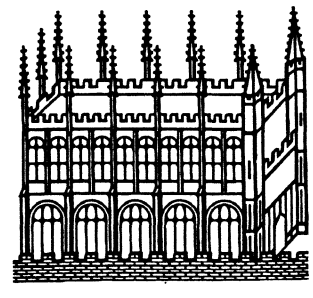
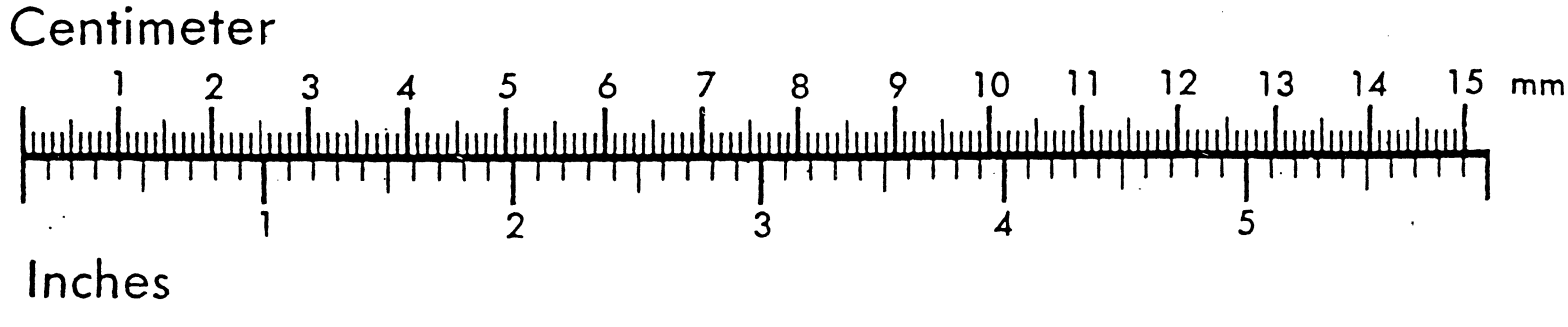
SCANNED BY

OXFORD UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES
IMAGING SERVICE

FROM THE COLLECTIONS IN

THE BODLEIAN LIBRARY
UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD





Images © Bodleian Library, University of Oxford

MS D. Phil. d 6381/2

A
STUDY OF THE
MIDDLE ENGLISH TREATISES
ON GRAMMAR

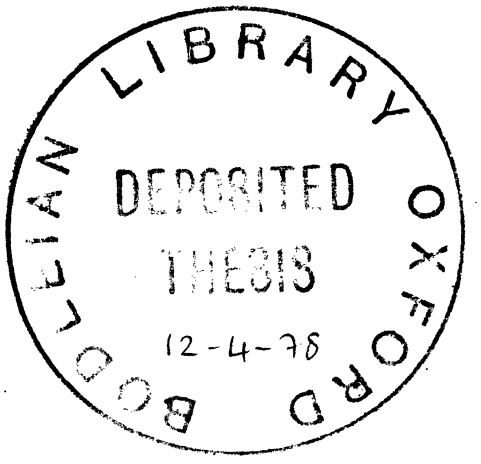
Thesis presented for the degree of
Doctor of Philosophy
in the University of Oxford

by

DAVID THOMSON
Keble College

1977 [i.e 1978] +M

PART TWO



PART TWO - THE TEXTS OF THE TREATISES

CONTENTS

			Pages
EDITORIAL PROCEDURE			141-143
ACCEDENCE	A	Peniarth fols.54v-57v and 48r	144-157
	B	Peniarth fols.163r, 165r-167v	158-169
	C	St. John's fols.1r-12r	170-192
	D	Trinity fols.4v-6v	193-212
	E	12195 fol.66r	213
	F	37075 fols.1r-6v	214-223
	G	PRO fols.22r-23r	224-226
	H	Norwich fol.1v	227-228
	J	Digby fols.63r, 63v, 5v, 62v	229
	K	Douce fols.53r-57ar	230-237
	L	Rawlinson fols.119r-126r	238-240
	M	Worcester fol.99v	241-242
COMPARACIO	N	Peniarth fol.9v	243
	O	Peniarth fols.163r-164v	244-249
	P	CUL fols.54v-56v	250-256
	Q	Douce Pr. Bk. fols.B5v-B6r	257-258
	R	Rawlinson fols.80r-83r	259-266
	S	Worcester fols.99vb-100ra	267-268
INFORMACIO	T	NLW fols.11v-17r	269-284
	U	Peniarth fols.1r-9v	285-301
	V	Peniarth fols.167v-168r	302-303
	W	Lincoln fols.91v-95r (margins)	304-313
	X	Hatton fols.46r-54v	314-331
	Y	Rawlinson fols.8r-15v and 73v	332-345
FORMULA	Z	Corpus fols.164r-169v	346-358
	AA	37075 fols.30v-37r and 41r	359-371
	BB	Harley fols.1r-12r	372-394
	CC	Rawlinson fols.76r-79v and 83v-89r	395-413
OTHER TREATISES	DD	Caius fol.15v	414
	EE	Trinity fols.4r and 6v-7v	415-428
	FF	TCD pages 3-11	429-435
	GG	Durham fols.1r-v	436-439
	HH	19046 fols.49r-63r	440-462
	JJ	37075 fol.72r	463
	KK	Arundel fols.118r-120r	464-470
	LL	Harley 1742 fols.1r-11r	471-482

EDITORIAL PROCEDURE

Each text is edited as a separate unit, and emended only where its sense is at fault or misleading. The spelling of the MSS is preserved unless it might cause grave misunderstanding, and in these cases the MS form is always given in a footnote. Only startling irregularities are noted as '*sic* MS'.

In English passages, where the writer does not differentiate the graphs of þ/y and ȝ/z I have silently introduced the distinction, but I have followed the MSS in using capital I throughout for modern I/J. Initial ff in the MSS is treated as if it were single f. Word division follows modern usage as far as possible except in the case of 'a nother' and similar phrases where some texts consistently use the word division shown. Abbreviations are expanded and the added letters italicised. Occasionally identical abbreviation marks give alternative expansions (e.g. *per-* and *par-*), but this is not the rule and abbreviations are normally expanded to a consistent form. The final flourishes to words common in the fifteenth century are probably of no significance and have been ignored, although an exception is made of final flourished r for *re* and ll for ll*is* where appropriate. w^{t} is, however, left abbreviated as no consistent expansion seems possible.

In Latin passages abbreviations are expanded silently, and in expanding I have followed the usual practice of the MSS in consistently giving v initially and u medially and finally. Italicisation in Latin passages indicates that the words are an example or title, except that in the footnotes some expansions are italicised to make the nature of an alteration or error clear.

Punctuation, capitalisation and layout in the texts is editorial. Folio ends are indicated by |. Where a guide letter has been left for the rubricator but no initial added the letter is given in parentheses with a note.

Four varieties of brackets are employed as follows:

( ) enclose editorial additions unless otherwise noted.

⟨ ⟩ show loss of text due to physical damage to the MS. I have supplied the loss conjecturally where possible.

[ ] enclose deletions in the MS. I have removed all except lengthy deletions to the notes, as described below.

⌜ ⌝ enclose additions in the MS. These are probably in the main hand of the text at the point of addition unless otherwise noted.

The footnotes record mostly difficulties of reading and alteration in the text. Reference is normally to the word immediately preceding the number referring to the footnote but to the whole of a bracketed passage. Where this is not the case or where confusion might arise the appropriate lemma is given in the notes and marked off with a square bracket. Where reference is to part of the preceding word the position of the part is shown by hyphens, so that a-, -a-, -a indicate the beginning, middle and end of a word respectively. Where a note of cancellation is given no such position, the cancelled letters followed the word to which the reference number is attached. The following table illustrates the formulae adopted:

Text	Footnote	MS reading
most[1]	-a canc.	most[a]
	a canc.	most [a]
	most] canc.	[most]
	a added after most	most ⌜a⌝
	MS adds a	most a
	MS molt	molt
	repeated	most most
	-o- from a	m[a]⌜o⌝st (by alteration, overwriting, etc.)
	a- canc.; MS adds a	[a]most a
	sic MS	most

A. Aberystwyth, N.L.W., MS Peniarth 356B, fols.54^{v}-57^{v} and 48^{r}

(fol.54^{v}) How mony partys of spech byn þer? VIII. Qwech viij? Nown, pronowne, verbe, aduerbe, participul, coniunccion, preposicion, interiection. How mony byn declynet and how mony byn vndeclynet? IIII byn declynet and iiij byn vndeclynet. Wech iiij byn declynet? Nowne, pronowne, verbe and partycipull. Wych iiij byn vndeclynet? Aduerbe, coniunccion, preposicion and interieccion. How mony byn declynyt w^{t} case and how mony w^{t}out case? III wyth case and on w^{t}out case. Wech iij wyth case? Nowne, pronowne and partycipull. Wych on w^{t}out case? Verbe allon.

How knos þu a nowne? For all þat I may fele, here or se þat berys þe name of a thyng, þe name ⌜þerof⌝ ys a nowne. How mony maners of nownus byn þer? II. Wych ij? A nowne substantiue and a nowne adiectiue. How knos þu a nowne substantiue? For hyt ys declynet w^{t} on articull or ij at þe most in on case. How knos þu a nowne adiectiue? For hyt ys declynet w^{t} iij artyculs or iij dyuers endyngus in on case. Wych byn þi articuls? Hic, hec, hoc. Wych byn þi dyuers endyngus? -Vs, -a, -vm; -r, -a, -vm, most comynly.

How mony thyngus longon to a now(n)? VI. Qwech vj? Qualite, comparyson, gendyr, nowmbyr,[1] figur[2] and case. How mony qualites byn[3] in a nowne? II. Wech ij? A propur and a comyn. How knos þu a propur qualyte? For hys Englysch acordys kyndle to on thynge, a(s) 'Ion', 'Robert'. How knos a comyn qualyte? For hys Englysch acordys kyndly to mo thyngus then to on, as 'a towne', 'a cyte'.

---

[1] MS nowmbys [2] ȝ canc. [3] -n from m

How mony degres of comparysons byn þer? III. Wych iij? Þe posytiue and compara tiue and þe superlatyue. How knos þu þe positiue degre? For he setys þe grownd of all oþer degres of comparisons and ys fowrmyt of non, as 'whyt', 'blak', 'rede'. How knos þu þe comparatiue degre? For he passys hys posytiue degre w^{t} þi aduerbe magis, and hys Englysch endys in '-vr' as 'whyttur', 'blakyr', þat ys to say 'whyttyr: more whyt', 'blaker: more blak'. How knos þu þe superlatyue degre?[1] For he passys hys posytyue degre w^{t} þis aduerbe maxime, and hys Englysch endys in '-ist', as 'wyttyst', 'blakyst', þat ys to say 'wytyst: most wyt', 'blakyst: most blak'.

How mony gendyrs of nownus byn þer? VII. Qwech vij? Þe masculyn, þe femyn, þe neuter, þe comyn of ij, þe comyn of iij, þe dubyn and þe epycyn. How knos þu þe masculyn gendyr? For hyt ys declynyt w^{t} hyc as hyc maijster. How knos þu þe femyn gendyr? For hyt ys declynet w^{t} hec as hec musa. How knos þe neuter gendyr? For hyt declynyt w^{t} hoc as hoc scamnum. How knos þu þe comyn of ij gendyrs? For hyt declynyt w^{t} hic and hec as nominatiuo hic et hec sacerdos. How knos þe comyn (fol.55^{r}) of iij gendyrs? For hyt declynyt w^{t} hic and hec | and hoc as nominatiuo hic et hec et hoc felix. How knos þu dubyn gendyr? For hyt ys declynyt w^{t} hic and hec and a vel coniuncc ion comyng bytwene as hic vel hec dies, for 'a day'. How knos þu þe epycyn gendyr? For[2] vndyr on voyse and vndyr on articull he comprehendys boþe þe male and þe female as hic passer for 'a sparo' both þe he and þe hoo.

---

[1] MS dregre

[2] hyt ys declynyt wt canc.

How mony nowmbyrs byn þer? II. Wech ij? Þe singuler and þe plurell. How knos þu þe singuler nowmbyr? For he spekys but of on thyng as 'mayster'. How knos þu þe plurell nowmbyr? For he spekys of mo thyngus þe of on as 'maysters'.

How mony casus byn þer? VI. Wech vj? Þe nominatiue, þe genytiue, þe datiui, þe accusatiui, þe vocatiue and þe ablatiue. How knos þu þe nominatiue case? For he comys byfor þe verbe of serten person and certayn nowmbyr and may vnsware to þi question 'wo or wat?'. How knos þu þe genetiue case? For 'of' aftyr a nowne substantiue, verbe substantiue, partitiue or distributyue, or superlatiue degre ys þe syng of þe genytiue case; and also wen ij nownus substantiuis comyn togedyr and þe ton be haue of þe todyr þe hauer schall be þe genitiui case. How knos þu þe datiue case? For 'to' befor a nowne or a pronowne w^{t}out a preposicion ys þe syne of þe datiui case. How knos þu þe accusatiue case? For þat casuell word þat comys next aftyr þe[1] verbe transitiue, ⌜gerundyue⌝,[2] partycipull or supyn most comynly schall be ⌜set in⌝ þe accusatiue case. How knos þu þe vocatiue case? For he clepus or callys ⌜or spekys to⌝. How knos þu þe ablatiue case? By my synys. Wych byn þi synus? 'Of' aftyr a nowne adie(c)tiue, verbe adiectiue, gerundyue, partycypull or[3] supyn; 'throgh' and 'w^{t}', 'fro', 'w^{t}out', 'then' and 'by' aftyr a comparaty(u)e degre. 'In' w^{t}out 'to' ys þe syne of þe ablatiue case, and wen 'in' and 'to' comyn togedyr hyt ys þe syne of þe accusatiue case.

---

[1] MS þer

[2] This and the next two insertions are in a lighter brown ink and a different hand.

[3] MS of

How mony declynsons of nownus byn þer? V. Wech v? Þe fyrst, þe secund, þe iij, þe iiij, þe v. How knos þu þe fyrst declynson of nownus? Þat ys of þe wech þe genitiui and datiue case singuler, þe nominatiue and þe wocatiue plurell endyn in -e; þe accusatiue in -am; þe accusatiue neuter as þe nominatiue; wen þe nominatiue endys in -a or in -am þe vocatiue schall be lyk hym, wen þe nominatiui endys in -as þe vocatiue schall end in -a; þe ablatiui in -a and oþer wyle in -am; þe genitiui case plurell in -arum; þe datiui and þe ablatiui in -is and oþer wyl in -abus; þe accusatiue in -as, yf hyt be neuter in -a.

How knos þu secund declynson of nownus? Þat ys of þe wech þe genitiui case singule endis in -i; þe datiue and þe ablatiue in -o; þe accusatiue in -vm; þe accusatiue neuter as þe nominatiue; wen þe nominatiue (endys) in -r or in -vm þe vocatiue schall be lyk hym, wen þe nominatiui endus in -vs þe vocatiue schall end in -e, wen þe nominatiue endys in -ius yf hyt be a propur name of a man þe vocatiue schall ende in -i, þe nominatiue and þe vocatiue plurell in -i yf hyt be ⟨nott a (fol.55ᵛ) man⟩; þe genitiui in -orum; þe | datyue and þe ablatiui in -is; þe accusatiue in -os, yf hyt be neuter in -a.

How knos þu þe þryd[1] declynson of[2] nownus? Þat ys[3] of þe wych þe genitiui case singuler endys in -is; þe datyue in -i; þe accusatyue in -em or in -im; þe accusatiui neuter as þe nominatiue; þe vocatiue schall be lyk þe nominatyue; þe ablatiui in -e or in -i; þe nominatiue, þe accusatyue, þe vocatiue case plurell in -es, yf þay be neuter in -a; þe genitiui plurel in -vm or in -ium; þe datiui and þe ablatiui in -bus.

---

[1] i- canc. [2] repeated [3] of canc.

How knos þe iiij declynson of nownus? Þat ys of þe wych þe genitiui case singuler endys in -vs; þe datyue in -vj; þe accusatiue in -vm; þe accusatiui neuter as þe nominatiue; þe vocatiue schall be lyk þe nominatiue; þe ablatyue in -v; þe nominatyue, þe accusatiui and þe vocatyue plurell in -vs, yf þay be neutyr in -a; þe genitiui plurell in -vum; þe datiui and þe ablatiui in -vbus.

How knos þu þe v decly(n)son of nownus? Þat ys of þe wech þe genitiui and þe datyue singuler endyn in -ei; þe accusatyue in -em; þe vocatiue schall be lyk þe nominatiue; þe ablatiui in -e; þe[1] nominatyue, þe[2] accusatyue, þe vocatyue plurell in -es; þe genitiui plurell in -erum; þe datyue and þe ablatyue in -ebus.

How knos þu a pronown? A pronowne ys a party of spech þe wych ys set for a mon and resayuys certayn person and certen nowmbyr. How mony pronownus byn þer? XV. Wech xv? Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste, hic and hijs, meus, tuus, suus, noster and vester, nostras and vestras. How mony byn primatyuis and how mony byn dyriuatyuis? VIII by primatyuis and vij byn dyriuatyuis. Wech viij byn primatyuis? Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste, hyc and hys. Wych vij byn dyryuatyuis? Meus, tuus, suus, noster and vester, nostras and vestras. Why byn þay cald primatyuis? For þay takyn hor bygynyng of no[3] oþer. Why by þay[4] called dyryuatyuis? For þay takyn hor byginyng of sum oþer.

---

[1] genitiui canc. [2] genitiui canc. [3] -þ canc.
[4] l canc.

How mony[1] thyngus longon to a pronowne? VI. Qwech vj? Qualite, gendyr, nowmbyr, figur, person and case. How mony qualites of pronownus byn þer? II. Wych? A certayn and a uncertayne. How knos þu a certayne qualite? A property by þe wech me knos wedyr a pronowne ys of certayn person, as ego. How knos þu a uncertayn qualite? A property by þe wech me knos wedyr a pronowne[2] be of vncertayne person, as ille. How many gendyrs of pronowns byn þer? V. Wech v? Þe masculyn as
140 (hic), þe femyn as hec, þe neuter as hoc, þe comyn of ij as hyc et hec nostras, þe comyn of iij as ego, tu, sui. How mony persons of pronowns byn þer? III. Wech iij? Þe fyrst, þe secund, þe iij. How knos þe fyrst person? For (he spekys) of hymself, as ego. How knos þu þe secund person? For he spekys to a noþer, as tu. How knos þu þe iij person? For spekys of a noþer, as ille.

How mony declynsons[3] of pronownus byn þer? IIII. Wech
(fol.56r) iiij? Þe fyrst, | þe secund, þe iij, þe iiij. How knos þu þe fyrst declynson of pronownus? Þat ys of þe wych þe genitiui
150 case singuler endys in -i and in -is, and þe datiui in -i. How mony pronowns has he? Ego, tu, sui. How knos þu þe ij declynso(n) of pronownus? Þat ys of þe wech þe genitiui case singuler endys in[4] -ius and in -ius, þe datyue in -i or in -e. How mony pronownus has he? V. Quech v? Ille, ipse, iste, hic and hijs; and viij nownus w[t] hor compowndus, þat ys to say vnus, vllus, totus, solus, alter, alius, quis et vter. How knos þu þe iij declynson of pronownus? For þe genetiui case singuler endys in -i[5] or in -e and in -i, þe datiue in -o[6] and

---

[1] -n- from y
[2] pron- from prop-
[3] MS declynsonsons
[4] MS adds Iu
[5] MS in
[6] in canc.

in -e and in -o. How mony pronownus has he? V. Wech v?
Meus, tuus, suus, noster and vester. How knos þu þe iiij
declynson of pronownus? For þe genytiue case singuler endys
in -atis, þe datiui in -ati. How mony pronownus byn þer of
(þe iiij declynson)? II. Wech ij? Nostras and vestras,
and on nown, þat ys to say cuias, -atis, -ati.

How knos þu a verbe? A party of spech þat ys declynet
w^t mod and tens, w^tout case or articull, and betokyns '⌜to⌝ do'
or 'to suffur' or 'to be'. How mony thyngus longon to a verbe?
VI. Wych vj? Mod, coniugacion, gendyr, nowmbyr,[1] fygur, tyme
and person. How (mony) modys byn þer? V. Whech v? Þe
indicatiue, þe imperatiue, þe optatiue, þe coniunctiue an þe
infenytyue. How knos þu þe indicatiue mod? For he tellys
or askys. How knos þu þe imperatiue mod? For he byddus or
comawndys. How knos þu optatiue mod? For he wylnys or
desyrus, and by þes iiij Latyn wordys vtinam, ne, quatynus
and osi. 'Wold' or 'schuld' schall serue to þe optatiue mod.
How knos þu þe coniuntiue mod? For he ioynus ij resons to-
gedyr in on mater; and by þes viij Enghysch[2] wordys 'yf',
'but', 'wen', 'wosumevyr', 'thagh', 'tyl' or 'aftyr' or'euyr'
wyll serue to þe[3] coniunctyue mode. How knos þu þe infenytyue
mod? For 'to' before a verbe ys þe syne of þe infenytyue mode;
and also wen ij verbus[4] comyn togedyr w^tout[5] a relatyue or a
coniunccion betwene, þe latyr schall be þe infenytyue mode.

How mony coniugacions[6] byn þer? IIII. Wych iiij? Þe
fyrst, þe secund, þe iij, þe iiij. How knos þu þe fyrst
coniugacion? For hit has A long befor þis lettyr S or þis
sillabull -ris or -re in þe secund person singuler nowmbur

---

[1] MS nownbyr [2] sic MS [3] to þe] repeated [4] w- canc.
[5] a- canc. before -out [6] -ns] MS -is

presentens of þe indycatyue mod, as amas, -aris vel -are. How knos þu ij coniugacion? For hyt has E long before þis lettyr S or ⟨þis⟩ sillabull -ris or -re in þe ij person singuler nowmbur presentens of þe indicatiue mode, as doces, -ceris vel docere. How knos þu þe iij coniugacion? For he (has) I (fol.56^{v}) schort by þis lettyr S or þis sillabull -ris or -re in þe secund person singuler nowmbur presentens of þe indicatiue mod, as legis, legeris vel -re. How knos þu þe iiij coniugacion? For hyt ha(s) I long before þis lettyr S or þis sillabull -ris or -re in þe ij person singuler nowmbyr presentens of indicatyue mod, as audis, -diris[1] vel -re.

How mony gendyrs of verbys byn þer. V. Qwech v? Þe acty(u)e, þe passyue, þe neuter, þe comyn and þe deponent. How knos þu a uerbe actiue? For hyt endys in -o and may tak -r apon O and mak of hym a passyue, as amo, amor. How knos þu a verbe passyue? For he endys[2] in -r and may do away þis lettyr R and turne into hys actyue, as amor, amo. How knos þu a uerbe neuter? For he[3] endys in -o[4] and yf he tak R apon -o yt ys no Latyn, as sto, curo. How knos þu a uerbe comyn? For he has þe letter of þe passyue and þe signific(ac)ion of þe actyue. How knos þu a uerbe depone(n)t? For he has þe lettyr of þe passyue and þe significacion of þe actyue and þe passyue bobe. How mony verbys comyn[5] byn þer? All þat byn contenyt in þe versus. Vnde versus:

---

[1] MS dire

[2] and canc.

[3] repeated

[4] y canc.

[5] MS comys

Largior, experior, veneror, moror, osculor, hortor,
Criminor, amplector tibi sunt communia lector;
Si bene conumeres, interpretor,[1] hospitor addes.

How mony tensus of verbys byn þer? V. Quech v? Þe presentens, þe preterinperfitens, þe preterperfitens, þe preterpluperfitens and þe futer tens. How knos þu þe presentens? For he spekys of þe tyme þat ys now. How knos þu þe preterinperfitens? For he spekys of þe tym þat ys lytyll agon, and comys w^t^ noþer of þe synes 'haue' ne 'had'. How knos þu
220 þe preterperfitens? For he spekys of þe tym þat ys perfytely past, and comys w^t^ syne 'haue'. How knos þu þe preter-pluperfitens? For he spekys of þe tym þat ys more þen perfytly past, and comes w^t^ þis syne 'had'. How knos þu þe futur tens? For he spekys of þe tym þat ys to com, and comys w^t^ þis syn 'schall'.

How knos þu aduerbe? A party of spech þat ys vndeclynyt, þe wych ys cast to a verbe to declare and fulfyll þe sygnific(ac)ion of þe verbe. How mony thyngus longon an aduerbe? III. Wych? Significacion, comparyson and figur.
230 Aduerbs þat comyn of now(n)us adiectyuis of þe ij declynson byn fowrmyt of þe datyue case singuler be chongyng of -o in -e a(s) docto, -te; doctissimo, -me; claro, -re; clarissimo, -me. Aduerbs þat comyn of nownus adiectyus of þe iij declynson byn fowrmyt on þis maner of wyse. Yf þe nominatiui case singuler end in -ns þay schall be fowrmyt of þe genitiui[2] singuler be chongyng of -tis into -ter, as sapientis, -ter; prudentis, -ter. All oþer takyn -tor in þe datiue case singuler, as forti, -titer; velociter.|

---

[1] MS interp⌜re⌝[e]⌜i⌝tor [2] from datyue

(fol.57^{r}) How knos þu a partycypul? A party of spech þat[1] ys declynet w^{t} case and articull and betokyns 'to do' or 'to suffer' or 'to be' as a verbe. How mony thyngus longon to a partycypull? VI. Wech vj? Gendyr, case, tym, significacïon, nowmbyr and fygur. How monys gendyrs of partycypuls? IIII. Wech iiij? Þe masculyn as hyc lectus, þe femyn as hec lecta, þe neuter as hoc lectum, þe comyn of iij as hic, hec, hoc legens. How mony tens of partycipuls byn þer? III. Wech iij? A partycypull of þe presentens, a partycipull of þe[2] pretertens, (a partycypull of þe futur tens and) a noþer of þe futur tens.

How knos þu a partycypull of þe presentens? By my Englysch and by my Latyn. How by þi Englysch and how by þi Latyn? Wen my Englysch endys[3] w^{t} '-yng' and my Latyn endys in -ens or in -ans I schall haue a partycipull of þe presentens, as amans: 'louyng'; docens: 'techyng'. Wereof schall he be fowrmyt? Of þe fyrst[4] person, singuler nowmbyr, preterinperfitens of þe indicatyue mode, be chongyng of -bam into N and S as amabam, chong -bam into N and S and then hyt wyll be amans, docebam, chong -bam into N[5] and S and þen hyt wyll be docens.

How knos þu a partycypull of þe pretertens? By my Englysch and by my Latyn. How by þi Englysch and how by þi Latyn? my Englysch schall bygyn w^{t} I and my Latyn schall end in -tus or in -sus, as amatus: 'i-louyt', doctus: 'i-taght'. Of whom schall he be fowrmyt? Of[6] þe latyr supyn[7] be putyng to þis lettyr S as amatum, -tu, put (to) þis letter S and hyt

---

[1] -i prob. canc. [2] futurt canc. [3] MS bygynus
[4] supyn canc. [5] MS S [6] repeated
[7] -n from m

wyll (be) amatus, -ta, -tum; doctum, -tu, put to þis lettyr S and hyt wyll be doctus, -a, -tum.

How ⟨knos þu a party⟩cypull of þe futur tens in -rus? By my Englysh[1] and by my Latyn. How by þi Englisch and how by þi Latyn?[2] My Englysch schall bygyne w[t][3] 'to' and my Latyn schall end in -rus, as amaturus: 'to luff'; docturus: 'to tech'.
270 Wereof schall he be fowrmyt? Of þe latyr supyn be[4] puttyng to þis sillabull -rus as amatum, -tu,[5] put to þis sillabull -rus and þen hyt wyll be amaturus, -ra, -rum; doctum, -tu, put to þis sillabull -rus þen hyt wyll be docturus, -ra, -rum. How knos a partycypull of þe last futur tens? By my Englysch and by my Latyn. How by þi Englysch and how by þi Latyn? My Englysch bygynys w[t] 'to' and 'be' and my Latyn endys in -dus, as amandus: 'to be louyt'; docendus: 'to be taght'.

Wereof schall he be fowrmyt? Of þe genitiui case singuler of a partycypull of þe presentens be chongyng of -tis into -dus,
280 as nominatiuo hic, hec, hoc[6] amans, genitiuo huis -tis, chong -tis into -dus and þen wyll hit (be) amandus, da, dum; hic, hec, hoc docens, genitiuo huius -tis, chong -tis into -dus
(fol.57v) and þen wyll hit | be docendus, da, dum.

How mony partycypuls longon to a uerbe actyue? II. Wech ij? A partycypull of þe presentens in -ens or in -ans, a partycypull of[7] þe futur in[8] -rus, as amans, amaturus. How mony partycypuls longon to a verbe passyue? II. Wech ij? A[9]

---

[1] -s- from g
[2] bi canc.
[3] to and canc.
[4] l canc.
[5] l canc.
[6] ara canc.
[7] MS or
[8] Ius canc.
[9] -s canc.

partycipull of þe pretertens in -tus or in -sus and a futur in -dus, as amatus, -dus. How mony particupuls longon to a verbe neuter. II, as to an actyue. Wych ij? A partycypull of þe presentens in -ens or in-ans and a futur in -rus, as stans, staturus.[1] How mony partycypuls longon to a uerbe deponent? III. Wech iij? A partycyp(u)ll of þe presentens in -ens or in -ans and a preter in -tus or in -sus and a futur in -rus, as loquens, loquutus, loquuturus. How mony particypuls longon to a verbe comyne? IIII. Wech iiij? A partycypull of þe presentens in -ens or in -ans and a preter in -tus or in -sus and a futur in -rus[2] and a noþer in -dus, as criminans, -atus, -turus, -andus. How mony endyngus of partycipuls by þer? VI. Wech vj? -Ens, -a(n)s, -tus,[3] -sus, -rus, -dus. Versus:

-Ens, -ans presentis semper dic temporis esse;
-Tus, -sus preteriti; -rus, -dus dic esse futuri;
-Ens, -ans, -rus et agunt, -tus, -sus, -dus compaciuntur.

How knos a coniunccion? A party of spech þat ys vndeclynet and ionys oþer partys of spechys togedyr. How mony thyngus longon to a coniunccion? III. Wech iij? Powere, fygur and ordyr. ⟨How mon⟩y powers of coniunccion byn þer? V. Wech v? Sum be[4] copulatyuis, sum byn ⟨disiunctiuis, sum⟩ byn explatyuis,[5] sum casuels and sum racionels.

How knos þu a preposicion? A party of spech þe wech ys vndeclynet and ys set before oþer partys of spechys togedyr in apposicion and composicion. How mony thyngus longon to a preposicion? On. Wych? Case allon. How mony casus wyl he serue to? II. Wech ij? Þe accusatiui and þe ablatiui.

---

[1] MS stuturus
[2] MS Ius
[3] d canc.
[4] þer canc.
[5] MS adds sum explatyuis

Wych byn þe preposicions þat wyll serue to þe accusatiui case? All þat byn contenyt in þis leson of þe 'Donet': 'Da prepositiones[1] casus accusatiui, vt ad, apud, et cetera'. Wych by þe preposycions þat wyll serue to ablatiui case? All þat byn contenyt in þis lesson of þe 'Donet': 'Da prepositiones casus ablatiui, vt a, ab, abs, et cetera'. Wych byn þe preposycions þat wyll serue to boþe? All þat by co(n)tenet in þis lesson of þe 'Donet': 'Da vtriusque casus preposiciones, et cetera'.

How knos þu an interiection? A party of spech þat ys declynet þe wech betokyns passion of a monus sole w[t] a imperfyt[2] voyse, as 'fy', 'out', 'alas' and 'waylaway'. How mony thyngus longon to a[3] interiection? On. Wych on? Significacion allon. How mony significacionus of interiections byn (þer)? IIII.

(fol.48[r]) Wych iiij? Sum betokyns ioy, | sum betokyns so(row), sum wondyr and sum betokyns drede.

How mony concordys in gramer byn þer? V. Quech v? Þe[4] fyrst betwene þe nominatiue case and þe verbe, þe secund betwene þe adiectyue and þe substantyue, þe iij betwene þe relatyue and þe antycedens, þe iiij betwen þe nowne partytyue and þe genitiui case þat folus, þe v betwene þe superlatyue degre and þe genitiui case þat folus. In how mony schall þe nominatyue case and þe verbe acord? In ij. Wech ij? Nowmbyr and person. In how mony schall þe nowne adiectyue and þe substantyue acord? In iij. Wech iij? Case, gendyr and nowmbyr. In how mony schall

---

[1] pre- from pro- [2] w canc. [3] coniunccion on canc. [4] from þer

340 (þe) relatyue and þe antycedens acord? In iij. Wech iij? Ge(n)dyr, nowmbyr[1] and person. In how mony schall þe nowne partytiue and þe genytyue case þat folus acord? In on. Wech on? Gendyr allon. In how mony schall þe superlatyue degre and þe genytyue case þat folus acorde? In on. Wech on? Gendyr alon, et cetera.

Explicit expliciunt, ludere scriptor eat.[2]

---

[1] MS nownbyr

[2] The explicit tag is in darker ink.

B. Aberystwyth, N.L.W., MS Peniarth 356B, fols.163^{r}, 165^{r}-167^{v}

(fol.163^{r}) (H)⟨o⟩w^{1} many maners of speche byn þer? VIII. Whiche viii? Noun, pronoun, verbe, aduerbe, participle, conunccion, preposicion, interieccion. How many of þes byn declyned and how many byn vndeclined? Four byn declyned and iiij byn vndeclyned. Whiche four byn declyned? Noun, pronoun, verbe and partycyple. Whiche four byn vndeclyned? Aduerbe, coniunccion, preposicion and interieccion. How many byn declyned w^{t} case and how many w^{t}owte case? III w^{t} case and on w^{t}owte case: verbe only.

How knowe ȝe a noun? For þe Laten of eny þyng ys^{2} a noun. How many maner nounys byn þer? II. Whiche ij? A noun substantyf and a noun adiectyf. How knowe ȝe a noun substantyf? For he^{3} may be vnderstond by hymselfe and ys declyned in Latyn w^{t} on article or w^{t} ij at þe moste: (w^{t} on article) as hic magister for 'a master', or w^{t} ij at þe moste in on case as hic et hec sacerdos. How knowe ȝe a noun adiectyf? For hit may not be vnderstond by hitself w^{t}owte helpe of anoder word owte sette or vnderstond, and is declyned in Latyn w^{t} iij articles or w^{t} iij dyuers endynges in one case as 'wys' and 'good': hic et hec et hoc sapiens, bonus, -na, -num. And euery noun þat may receyue comparyson is a noun adiectyf, as senex, senior, iuuenis, iunior. How many articles byn þer? III. Whiche iii? Hic, hec, hoc.

How many þynges fallen to a noun? VI. Whiche vj? Qualite, comparison, gender, noumber, figure and case. How ys þis verbe

---

^{1}(H) - guide letter ^{2}repeated ^{3}MS ȝe

accidunt[1] declyned? Accido, -dis, accidi, -dere, -dendi, -do, -dum, accidens. Of whom ys þis verbe accido ycomponed? Of þis preposicion ad and þis verbe cado by changyng D into C and A into I. Why lakethe þis verbe acido þe supines? For all þe componys of þis verbe cado, -dis lacken þe supynes but accido, -dis, þe whiche makethe occasum, -su and recido, -dis makyng recasum, -su. Versus:

A -cido[2] composita renuerunt cuncta supina;
Occidit, occasum prebet, recidoque recasum.

What ys a qualite accidentall in a noun? A qualyte accidentall in a noun ys a propurte to acorde to on þyng kyndely all only, and so hyt is a propur qualite as Petrus, Willelmus, Iohannes, or to many and þen hit is a comyn qualite as homo.

(A text of the Comparacio is inserted at this point, instead of the short passage on comparison, which is given as text O below. The section on the noun continues on fol. 165^{r} after a lacuna caused by a lost folio.)

...⟨How know ȝe þe secund clynson of novnys? For þe genetyf case singler endyth in -i, þe datyf and þe ablatyf in -o, þe (fol.165^{r}) accusatyf in -vm, þe accusatyf neuter⟩[3] | as þe nóminatyf. When þe nominatyf case singler endithe in -r or be neuter gendyr þe (vocatyf) shall be like hym. When þe nominatyf case endyth in -vs þe vocatyf shall end in -e. When þe nominatyf case endithe in -ius ȝif hit be a propur name of a man þe vocityf shall end in -i; the nominatyf and þe vocatyf plurell in -i, ȝif þey be neuter in -a; þe genetyf in -orum; þe datyf and þe ablatyf in -ys; þe accusatyf in -os, ȝif hit be neuter in -a.

---

[1] de canc. [2] A -cido] MS accido

[3] Supplied to complete the sense.

Et declinentur hec nomina: hic caminus, hec corulus, hoc collum, hoc pellagus,[1] hic Vergilius, hic Laurentius, hoc iuger(um),[2] hic Theseus. How know ȝe þe þryd clynson? For þe genetyf case endyth in -is; þe datyf in -i; þe accusatyf in -em or in -im; þe accusatyf neuter as þe nominatyf; þe vocatyf shall be like þe nominatyf; þe ablatyf in -e or in -i; þe nominatyf, þe accusatyf and þe vocatyf plurell in -es, ȝif þey be neuter in -a; þe genetyf in -vm or in -ium; þe datyf and þe ablatyf in -bus. How know ȝe þe fourthe declynson of novnys? For þe genetyf case singler endithe in -vs; þe daty(f) in -vi; þe accusatyf in -vm; þe accusatyf neuter as þe nominatyf; þe vocatyf shall be like þe nominatyf: þe ablatyf in -v; þe nominatyf, þe accusatyf and þe vocatyf plurell in -vs, ȝif þey be neuter in -a; þe genetyf in -vum; þe daty(f) and þe ablatyf in -bus. Et declinentur hec nomina: hic arcus, hec acus; hoc cornu(s).

How know ȝe þe v clynson of novnys? For þe genetyf and þe datyf case singler endyn in -ey; þe accusatyf in -em; þe vocatyf shall be like þe nominatyf; þe ablatyf in -e: the nominatyf, þe accusatyf and þe vocatyf plurell in -es; þe genetyf in -ejum; þe datyf and þe ablatyf in -ebus. Et declinentur hec nomina: hic meridies, hec[3] spes.

(H)ow[4] know ȝe a pronowne? A pronoun is a maner of speche declyned w^t^ case, þe whiche is sette for a propur noun and receyuethe certeyn person. How many þyngus longeth to a pronoun?[5]

---

[1] MS pullagus

[2] dubious reading

[3] from he

[4] (H)- guide letter

[5] ii canc.

VI. Whiche vj? Qualite, gendir, noumbre, figure, person and case. How many pronouns byn þer? XV. Whiche xv? Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste, hic and is; meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, nostras and vestras. How many of þes byn primytyfes and how many dryuatyfes? VIII byn primatyfes and vij byn dryuatyfes. Whiche viij byn primitifes? Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste, hic and is. Whiche vij byn dryuatyfes? Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, nostras and vestras. Whiche of þes primytyfes byn only demonstratyfes and how many relatyfes, and how many byn oder while demonstratyfes and oder while relatyfes? Foure byn only demonstratyfes. Whiche foure? Ego, tu, hic and iste. Whiche byn only relatyfes? II. Whiche ij? Is and sui.[1] Whiche ij byn oder while demonstratyfes and oder while relatyfes? Ille, ipse. When byn þey relatyfes and when byn þey demonstratyfes? When þey byn putte in þe fyrste clause of a reson þat a man speketh þen (þey) byn demonstratyfes, (fol.165^{v}) as when y sey: Ille vel ipse currit; and when þey byn sette[2] in þe secund clavse of a reson þat a man speketh þen þey byn relatyfes, vt: Iohannes et ille vel ipse est fessus. Vnde versus:

Tantum demonstrant ego, tu simul hic simul iste;
Et tantum referunt, si discimus, isque suique;
Nunc monstrant, referunt, si discimus, ille vel ipse.

How many pronovnys haue þe uocatyf case and how many lackyn? IIII haue and all þe oder lacken. Whiche iiij haue? Tu,[3] meus, noster and nostras. Vnde versus:

Quatuor exceptis pronomina nulla vocabis;
Tu, meus et noster, nostras: hec sola vocantur.

---

[1] MS sue [2] -t canc. [3] -i canc.

How many pronovnys byn possessyues? V. Whiche v? Meus, tuus, noster and vester. How many of þes dryuittyfes betokeneth only folke? II. Which ij? Nostras and vestras.

How many persons byn þer? III. Which iij? Þe fyrst, þe ij, þe iij. How know ȝe þe first person? For hit spekyth of hitselfe all only, and þen hit ys (singler as ego, or ellys as 'we', and þen hit ys) plurell as nos. How know ȝe þe ij person? For hit spekyth to a noder by hitself, and þen hit ys singler as tu, or ellys as 'ȝe', and þen hit ys plurel as vos. How know ȝe þe þryd person? For speche ys made þerof betwene þe fyrst person and þe secund by[1] hitself, and þen hit ys singler as ille, or ellys w^t^ oder, and þen hit is plurel as illi; and euery word þat declyned w^t^ case is þryd person, oute-take ego, nos, tu and vos and her obliyquis, and þe vocatyf case.

Terne persone generaliter omnis habetur
Rectus, sed demas pronomina quatuor inde.
Ista vocant rectos ad primam siue secundam,
Sunt ego, nos prime; tu, vos quoque sumpto[2] secunde:
Pauper ego ludo, dum tu diues meditaris;
Nos tuti loquimur, dum vos timidi taciatis.

How many clynsons of pronouns byn þer? IIII. Whiche iiij? The first, þe secund, þe iij, þe iiij. How know ȝe þe fyrst clynson of pronouns? For þe genetyf case singler endith in -i or in -is, and þe datyf in -j. How many pronouns byn þer of þat declynson? III. Which þre? Ego, tu, sui. How know ȝe þe secund clynson of pronouns? For þe genetyf case singler endyth in -jus or in -jus, and þe datyf in -j or in -c.[3] How many pronouns byn þer of þat clynson? V. Whiche v? Ille, ipse, iste, hic and is, and viij nounys w^t^ her compnouns þe whiche byn conteyned in þes versus. Vnde versus:

---

[1] MS byn [2] dubious reading. MS sūpto
[3] from cc

Vnus et vllus, vter, alter,[1] nullus quoque neuter,
Totus dant (in) -ius genitiuos[1a] addis alius.

How many of þes haue þe vocatyf case and how many lakyn? III haue and all (þat oder lacken. Which iij haue) þe vocatyf case? Þat byn totus, solus and vnus and all þat oder lacken. Vnde versus:

Pone vocatiuos cum totus, solus et vnus;
Sed non in reliquis quorum geniti(u)us in -ius.

(fol.166[r]) How know ȝe þe þryd clynson of pronouns? For þe genetyf case
141 singler endyth in -e and in -i, and þe datyf in -o and in -e (and) in -o. How many pronouns byn þer of þat declynson? V. Whiche v? Meus, tuus, suus, noster and vester. How know ȝe þe iiij declynson of pronov(n)ys? For þe genetyf[2] endyth in -atis and þe datyf in -ati. How many pronouns byn þer of þat declynson? II. Which ij? Nostras and vestras. How many pronowns byn of þe fyrst declynson, how many of þe ij, how many of þe þryd, and how many of þe iiij? Þre of þe fyrst, v[3] of þe ij, v of þe iij, ij of þe iiij. Versus:

150 Sunt tria prime, sed solummodo[4] quinque secunde;
Tercia quinque tenet inflexio, sed duo quarta.

How know ȝe a verbe? A verbe ys maner of spech þe whiche is declyned w[t] mod and tens w[t]owte case and article and betokeneth 'to do' or 'to suffer'. How many þyngus longyth to a verbe? VII. Which vij? Mode, coniugacion, gendir, noumbre, figure, tyns and person. Whereby know ȝe a verbe when hit betokeneth 'to do' and when hit betokenethe 'to suffur'? When y haue eny of þes vj wordys 'am', 'art', 'ys', 'was', 'were' or 'be' my verbe betokeneth 'to suffer', and when y haue non of hem my

---

[1] MS alius [1a] MS genitȝ [2] gr canc. [3] ij canc. [4] MS (?) i from -o

verbe betokeneth 'to do'. How many maners of verbys byn þer? V. Whiche v? A verbe actyf, passyf, neuter, comyn and deponent. How know ȝe a verbe actyf? For hit endyth[1] in -o and ma(y) be construed w^t on oblike case of a resonable þyng and may take R vppon O and make of hym a passyf as amo, amor. How know ȝe a verbe passyf? For hit endyth in -r and may do away his R and turne into his actyf. How know ȝe a verbe neuter? For hit endith in -o, and yf hit take R uppon O hit is no Latyn, as sto, curro. How know ȝe a verbe conyn? For hit endyth in -r and comyth of no verbe endyng in -o, and betokenethe 'to do' and 'to suffer' in euery person and noumber. How many byn þer? VIII. Whiche viij? Patent per versus:

> Largior, experior, veneror, moror, osculor, ortor,
> Criminor, amplector tibi sunt communia lector;
> Stipulor adiunges; interpretor, hospitor addas.

How know ȝe a verbe deponent? For hit endith in -r and comyth of no verbe þat endyth in -o, and betokeneth only 'to do' or only 'to suffur' in þe fyrst person and þe secund.

How many modys byn þer? V. Whiche v? Indicatyf mode, imperatyf, optatyf, coniunctyf, infenytyf. How know ȝe þe indicatyf mode? For hit sowethe a reson sothe or fals and betokeneth askyng or tellyng. How know ȝe imperatyf mode? For hit biddithe or commandyth. How know ȝe þe optatyf mode? For hit willythe or desyryth, and þes iij Latyn wordus vtinam, ne and osi, (and þes ii Englysse wordys) 'wold' and 'shold', seruyn to þe optatyf mode. How know ȝe þe coniunctyf mod? For hit ioyneth a noder verbe to hymselfe or hymselfe to a noder verbe, and þes viij (fol.166^v) Englysse wordys | 'ȝif', 'but', 'when', 'whosoeuer', 'ȝowȝte', 'till', 'after', or 'euer' shall serue to þe coniunctyf mode;

---

[1] n- canc.

and þes Latyn wordys conteyned in þes versus seruyn to
coniunctyf mode. Versus:

> Si, quamuis, quamquam, tametsi, licet atque priusquam,
> Antequam et donec, vt, postquam siue quousque,[1]
> Cum, nisi, quin, acsi, quo[2] coniu(n)gunt, tibi dico.
> Indicat et quando, sic setera dic aliquando.

How know ȝe infenytyf mode? For when two verbes comyn togedder w^t^owte a relatyf or a coniunccion, þe later verbe shall be infenytyf mode; and 'to' before a verbe ys syne of infynytyf mode, as Iohannes amat audire doctrinam magistri. How many coniugacions byn þer? IIII. Whiche iiij? Þe fyrst, as amo, amor; þe ij, as doceo, -ceor; þe iij as lego, -gor; þe iiij as audio, audior. How know ȝe þe fyrste coniungacion? For hit hath A long before -re in þe infenytyf mode, as amare, or A long before -ris in þe secu(n)d person singuler noumbre present tens indicatyf mode, as amaris. How know ȝe þe secund coniugacion? For hit hath E long before -re in þe infenityf mode, as docere. How know ȝe þe iij coniugacion? For hit hathe E shorte before þe -re in þe infenityf, as legere. How know ȝe þe fourthe coniugacion? For hit hath I long before -re in þe infenityf mode, as audire.

How many tens byn þer? V. Whiche v? The present tens, preterinperfitens, preterperfite tens, preterpluperfyte tens and futur tens. How know ȝe þe present tens? For hit spekyth of tyme þat ys nowe, as 'y loue'. How know ȝe þe preterinperfites tens? For hit betokeneth tyme þat ys not fully agon w^t^owte þes synes 'haue' or 'hadde', as 'I loued'. How know ȝe þe preterperfite tens? For hit betokeneth tyme þat is fully agon w^t^ þis syne 'haue', as '(I) haue louyd'. How know ȝe þe preterpluperfite tens? For hit betokenet tyme þat

---

[1] MS quousquam [2] MS que

is long ago w^{t} þis sine 'hadde', as 'I hadde louyd'.[1] How know ȝe þe futur tens? For hit betokeneth tyme þat is to come w^{t} þes synes 'shall' or 'shull', as 'y shall loue'.

How many tens byn formed of þe preterperfite tens, indicatyf mode? VI. Which vj? The preterpluperfite tens of indicatyf mode, as amauy: change I into E and sette þer-to -ram and þen hit is amaueram. The preterpluperfite tens of þe optatyf mode, as amauy: put þer-to S and -sem and þen hit is amauissem. The preterperfyte tens[2] of coniunctyf mode, as amauy: change I to E and put þer-to -rim and þen hit ys amauerim. The preterpluperfite tens of þat same mode, as amauy: put þer to S and -sem and þen hit is amauyssem. The futur tens of þat same mode, as amauy: change I into E and put þer-to -ro and þen hit is amauero. The preterpluperfite tens of infinytyf mode, as docui: put þer-to S and -sem and þen hit docuissem. How many of þes change I into E? Þre. Whiche þre? Þe preterpluperfite of indicatyf mode, þe preterperfitetens and þe futur tens of coniunctyf mode, as legi: change I into E and put þer to -ram, -rim, -ro and þen |

(folio missing)

(fol.167^{r}) ..to accusatyf case and when to ablatyf case? When 'in' and 'to' conyn togedder, þen þey shall serue to accusatyf case; and when 'in' comyth wytoute 'to' hit will serue to ablatyf case. Vnde versus:

'Into' vult quartum, sine[3] 'to' vult possere sextum:
In campo curro si sis, bene dicis, in illo.
Si sis exterius in campum sit tibi cursus.

---

[1] MS bouyd [2] g canc. [3] MS sūe

When will super serue to accusatyf case and when to ablatyf case? When super betokeneth 'vppon' w^{t}[1] towchyng þat will serue to accusatyf cas, as 'Appuls hongyn on þe tre', Poma pendunt pomum; and when super betokeneth 'vppon' w^{t}oute towchyng þen hit will serue to ablatyf case, as 'Þu shall go on myn erand', Tu ibis super meo negocio. Vnde versus:

Quando super signat in, de, sexto societur;
Sed quarto seruet aliter quocumque locetur.

When will þes iiij preposicions in, ⟨sub⟩, super and subter serue to accusatyf case and when to ablatyf case? When þey betokyn mouyng þey will serue to accusatyf, vt Vado subter sepem, and when þe(y) betokyn no mouyng þ⟨en⟩ þey will serue to ablatyf case, as 'Þe sheperd lythe vnder þe fold', Pastor jacet sub ⟨ouile[2]⟩. Vnde versus:

Construe cum quarto super, in, sub subter eundo,
Ast ablatiuis predatos[3] construe stando.

(H)ow[4] know ȝe an interiection? An interiection ys a party of speche vndeclyned þat betokeneth passion of soule w^{t} an vnperfete voys. How many þyngns longyn to a interiection? On. Whiche on? Significacion only. Wherein is þe sygnificacion of interiection? Som in sorow as ⟨he⟩w, 'alas'; som in gladnes as ouge, 'well þe be'; som in dred as attat, 'owte owte'; som in wondyr as pape, 'lord mercy'; som indignacion as jachasis.

(H)ow[5] many (a)cordes of gramer byn þer? V. Whiche v? Þe fyrst betwene þe nominatyf case and his verbe, the ij betwene þe adiectyf and his substantyf, the iij betwene þe relatyf and

---

[1] owte canc. [2] dubious reading

[3] MS predatis; a letter canc. [4] (H)- guide letter

[5] (H)- guide letter

his anticedent, the iiij betwene þe no⟨un⟩ partyf, dystry(butyf) and þe genetyf case þat foloweth, the v betwene þe superlatyf degre and þe genetyf case þat foloweth.

In how many shall þe nominatyf case and his verbe be acorde? In two. In which ⟨two⟩? In numbre and person. Exemplum as 'My felawe redyth his lesson', Socius meus legit leccionem suam.

⟨Persona⟩, numero recto verbum sociato.

In how many s⟨hall⟩ þe adiectyf and þe substantyf acorde?
280 In iij. In which iij? In case, gendyr and noumbre, as 'Þis man ȝeue a f⟨ayr ȝifte⟩'; Iste homo dedit mihi pulcrum donum. Vnde versus:

In casu, genere, numero da mobile fyxo.

In how many shall þe relatyf and þe anticedens acorde? In iij. In which iij. Gendyr, noumbre and person.

Exemplum: 'Thys bred ys ⟨mowldy⟩, þe whiche ys made of whete'; Iste panis est mucidus qui sit de frumento. Versus:

In numero, ⟨genere⟩, persona consimilatum
Cum precedenti[1] fore dic debere relatum.

290 In how many shall þe ⟨noun parti⟩tyf and þe noun distributyf and þe genetyf case þat foloweth acorde? In (on). In whiche on? In gendyr al only. Exemplum: 'My fadyr ys on of creaturis', Pater meus est vna creaturarum. Versus:

Concordans genere[2] fore cum casu genetiuo
Dic partitiuum, veliti Venit vna[3] sororum.

What y(s) a noun partityf? An adiectyf þat betokeneth party as vnus, alius, quidam, vter, alter, vterque.

---

[1]MS precedendo ẽnti [2]MS genito [3]sorum canc.

(fol.167^{v}) In how many shall þe superlatyf degre and þe genetyf case þat foloweth acorde? In on. In whiche on? In gendyr only. Ȝif so be þat he be taker of þe signi(fi)cacion of þe superlatyf degre - þat is to say, when þe genetyf may be changyd into þe same case þat þe superlatyf degre ys and þe superlatyf degre into þe posityf by trewe sentence, as þus: 'The rose is fayryst of flovrys', hit may be changyd þus and þe sentence trewe: 'Þe rose ys a feyre flovre' - ȝe may all wey chese, when þe genetyf case ys taker of þe significacion of þe superlatyf degre, whedur ȝe will þat he acorde w^{t} þe substantyf þat gothe before or w^{t} þe genetyf case þat cometh after in gendyr, as. Rosa est pul(c)errima vel pulcerimus florum, Deus est optima vel optimus[1] rerum, Frater meus est sapientissimus vel sapientissima creaturarum. But when þe genetyf case is not taker of þe signi(fi)cacion of þe superlatyf degre he shall acorde only w^{t} þe substantyf þat gothe before, vt Iohannes est fortissimus istius societatis. Vnde versus:[2]

Omne superlatum partitiue recitatum
Semper vult generi genitiui par retineri,
Vt pateat verum, Deus est dic optima rerum.
Imo superlatum propria vi quando locatur
Per genus hoc fixo precedenti similetur,
Naso dat verum: Quid agis pulcerrima rerum.

(The beginning of a text of the Informacio follows, which is given as text U below.)

---

[1] 2. canc.

[2] MS adds a scribble

C. Cambridge, St. John's College, MS F.26 (163), fols.1^{r}-12^{r}

(fol. 1^{r}) How many partes ben þere of reson? VIII. Qwech viij? Nown, pronown, verbe, aduerbe, participyl, coniunccyon, preposicyon and interiectyon. ⌜How many be declynyd and how many be vndeclynyd? IIII be declynyd and iiij be vndeclynyd. Qwech iiij be declyned? Nown, pronown, verbe and participyl. And qwech iiij be vndeclynyd? Aduerbe, coniunccyon, preposicyon and interieccyon⌝.[1] How many be declyned wit case and how many w^{t}owte case? Thre be declyned wit case and on w^{t}owte case. Qweche thre be declyned w^{t} case? Nown, pronown, and participyl. And qwo w^{t}owte case? Al only verbe.

Qwerby knowyst a nown? For al thyng þat may be seen, herd oþer felt or beryth þe name of a thyng is a nown. How many maneer of nownys ben þere? To. Qweche to? Nown substantyf and nown adiectyf. Qwerby knowe ȝe a nown substantyf? For he may stonde in a perfyth reson w^{t}owtyn helpe of a noþer wurd, as 'man', 'tre' or 'beest', and is declinyd in Latyin w^{t} on artikyl or too at þe moost in o case, as nominatiuo hic magister, or nominatiuo hic et hec sacerdos. Qwerby knowyst a nown adiectyf? For he may not stonde alone in a perfyth reson w^{t}owtyn help of a noþer wurd, as 'qwyt', 'red', 'blak', and is declyned in Latyn w^{t} iij articulys or iij dyuerse endynggis in o case, as nominatiuo hic et hec et hoc felix, or nominatiuo bonus, bona, bonum. How many articulys ben þere? III. Qwech iij? Hic, hec, hoc. How many diuerse endynggis ben þere? III. Qwech iij? -Vs, -a and -vm or ellys -or, -a and -vm.

Qwat is a conparison? A lyknesse of thynggis þat may be mad more or lesse w^{t} good sentence. How many degrees of

---

[1] added at foot of page

comparison ben þere? Thre. Qwech iij? The posityf, þe comparatyf and þe superlatyf. Qwerby knowyst þe posityf degre? For he is ground of al oþer grees of comparison, as 'fayir', 'fowl' and soch oþer. Qwer⌜by⌝ knowyst þe comparatyf degre? For he passyth hys posityf w^{t} þis aduerbe 'more' or 'lesse' and endyth in Englysch in '-r', as 'fayrer', 'fowler' and soch oþer. Qwerby knowyst þe superlatyf degre? For he passyth hys posityf w^{t} þis aduerbe 'most' or 'lest' and endyth in Englysch in '-est', as 'fayrest', 'fowlest' and soch oþer. Wyt qwat case wele þe comparatyf degre construe? Wyt ablatyf case of bothe nowmberis w^{t}owtyn a preposicyon, as forcior illo vel forcyor illis, saue if quam come betwyn; þanne cuppelyth he lyke case. W^{t} qwat case wele þe superlatyf degre construe? W^{t} þe genityf case plurer, as dignissima creaturarum, or w^{t} þe genityf siguler of a nown collectyf. How many nown collectiuys be þer? It is schewyd be þe verse. Vnde versus:

Sunt collectiua populus, gens, plebs quoque turba.

How many genderys of nown ben þere? VII. Qwech vij? The masculyn, þe femynyne, þe neuter, þe comown of to, þe comown of thre, þe dubyn and epycene. Qwerby knowyst þe masculyn gender? For it is declyned w^{t} hic,[1] as nominatiuo hic magister.[2] Qwerby knowyst þe feminyne gender? For it is declyned w^{t} hec, as nominatiuo hec musa. Qwerby knowyst þe neuter gender? For it is declyned w^{t} hoc, as nominatiuo hoc scamnum. Qwerby knowyst þe comun (of) to gender? For it is declyned w^{t} hic and hec, as hic et hec sacerdos. Qwerby knowyst þe comun of thre gender? For it is declyned w^{t} hic,

---

[1] artikyl or to at þe most in o case canc.

[2] or nominatiuo hic et hec sacerdos canc.

hec and hoc, as hic et hec et hoc felix. Qwerby knowyst þe duby gendyr? For (it) is declyned wit hic vel hec, as hic vel hec dies. How many nownys be þere of þis gender? It schew^{t} be þe vers:

> Margc diesque, silex, finis, clunis quoque cortex:
> Hec veteres vere dubij generis posuere.
> Singula sunt dubij sed sunt pluralia primi.

(fol.1^{v}) Qwerby knowyst þe epicene gendyr? For vndyr on artikyl be comprehendyd bothe male and femal, as hic passer 'a sparow', hec aquila 'an egyl', hec muscela 'a wesyl' and hic miluus 'a puttock'. And foure wurdys þat folwyn in þe verse þat sewyth be epicene gender:

> Damaque pantera, grus, bubo sunt epicena.

How many nowmberys ben þere? To. Qwech to? Singuler and plurer. Qwerby knowyst singuler nowmbyr? For he spekyth but of o thyng, as 'man'. Qwerby knowyst plurer nowmbyr?[1] For he spekyth of many thynggis, as 'men'.

How many casys be þere? VI. Qwech vj? The nominatyf, þe genityf, þe datyf, þe accusatyf, þe vocatyf and þe ablatyf. Qwerby knowyst þe nominatyf case? For he comth beforn þe verbe and doth or sufferyth þe dede of þe verbe. Qwerby knowyst þe genityf case? For 'of' aftyr a nown substantyf, verbe substantyf, nown partityf, nown distributyf or a superlatyf degre is þe syne of genityf case. Qwerby knowyst datyf case? For ⌜'to'⌝ beforn a casual wurd w^{t}owtyn a preposicyon is syne of datyf case. Qwerby knowyst accusatyf case? For he comth ⌜aftyr⌝ þe verbe, gerundyf, participyl or suppyn þat betokenyth 'to do' and sufferyth þe dede of þe verbe; and also alle þe wurdys in 'Da prepositiones casus accusatiui' serue to þe

---

[1] plurer nowmbyr *canc.*

accusatyf case. Qwerby knowyst vocatyf case? For he betokenyth preying, biddyng or callyng. Qwerby knowyst ablatyf case? For 'in', 'wit', 'fro', 'beforn' and 'aftyr' and alle þe wurdys in 'Da preposiciones casus ablatiui' ar þe synes of ablatyf; and also 'of' aftyr a propyr name or a nown adiectyf or a verbe
90 adiectyf, gerundyf, participyl or suppyn is þe syne of ablatyf case. Vnde versus:

> Mobile vel proprium vel participans quoque verbum
> Si sequitur sensus genitiui iungito sextum;
> Cum reliquis sextum non iungas sed genitiuum.

How many declensons be þer? V. Qwech v? The furst, þe secunde, þe thrydde, þe fourt, þe fyfte. Qwerby knowyst þe secunde declension? For þe genityf case singuler endyth in -i; þe datyf in -o; þe accusatyf in -vm; þe vocatyf schal be lyke þe nominatyf, saue qwan þe nominatyf endyth in -vs þe
100 vocatyf most comunly schal endyn in -e as nominatiuo hic dominus, (fol.2r) vocatiuo o domine, and qwanne þe nominatyf singuler of a propyr name endyth in -ius þe vocatyf schal endyn in -i as nominatiuo hic Laurencius, vocatiuo o Laurenci; Vincentius, Vincenti; Gregorius, Gregori; and filius makyth vocatiuo o filie vel fili; also in a neutyr gender þe nominatyf, þe accusatyf and þe vocatyf schal acorde; þe ablatyf schal endyn in -o; þe nominatyf and þe vocatyf plurer in -i; þe genityf in -horum; þe datyf and þe ablatyf in -is; þe accusatyf ⌜in -os⌝; and in a neutyr gendyr þe nominatyf, þe accusatyf and
110 þe vocatyf schal endyn in -a.

Qwerby knowyst þe furst declension of nown? For þe genityf case singuler endyth in -e; þe datyf also; þe accusatyf in -am; þe vocatyf schal be lyke þe nominatyf, saue if þe nominatyf ende in -as þe vocatyf schal endyn in -a as nominatiuo

hic Thomas, vocatiuo o Thoma; þe ablatyf in -a; þe nominatyf and þe vocatyf plurer in -e; þe genityf in -arum; and datyf and þe ablatyf in -is, saue if þe feminyne be drawe out of þe masculyn as domina is drawyn out of dominus, þanne schall þat feminyne make þe datyf and þe ablatyf plurer in -abus as domina, dominabus; and in a neutyr gender þe nominatyf, þe accusatyf and þe vocatyf acordyn; ⌜þe accusatyf in -as⌝. How many newtyr genderys be of þat declenson? It is schewyd be þe vers þat folwyn:

Pascha, polenta, iota, zizannia, mammona, manna
Sunt neutri generis et declinacio prima.

Qwerby knowyst þe thryddc declension? For þe genityf case singuler endyth in -is; þe datyf in -i; þe accusatyf in -em or in -im; þe vocatyf lyke þe nominatyf; and in a neutyr gender þe nominatyf, þe accusatyf and þe vocatyf acordyn; þe ablatyf in -é or in -i; þe nominatyf, ⌜þe accusatyf⌝ and þe vocatyf plurer in -es; þe genityf in -vm or in -ium; þe datyf in -bus; and in a neutyr gender þe nominatyf, þe accusatyf and þe vocatyf in -a; and þe ablatyf in -bus.

Qwerby knowyst þe fourt declenson? For þe nominatyf, genityf and vocatyf singuler endyn in -vs; þe datyf in -vi; þe accusatyf in -vm; and þe ablatyf in -v; the nominatyf, þe accusatyf and þe vocatyf plurer in -vs; þe genityf in -vum; þe datyf and þe ablatyf in -bus.

Qwerby knowyst þe fyft declenson of nown? For þe genityf and datyf singuler endyn in -ei; þe accusatyf in -em; þe vocatyf lyke þe nominatyf; þe ablatyf in -e; þe nominatyf, þe accusatyf and þe vocatyf plurer in -es; þe genityf in -erum; þe datyf and þe ablatyf in -ebus.

Nominatiuo hec musa, genitiuo huius muse, datiuo huic muse, accusativo hanc musam, vocatiuo o musa, ablatiuo ab hac musa; et pluraliter nominativo hec muse, genitiuo harum -sarum, datiuo hijs -sis, accusatiuo has -sas, vocatiuo o -se, ablatiuo ab hijs musis.

Nominatiuo hec domina, genitiuo huius domine, datiuo huic domine, accusatiuo hanc dominam, vocatiuo o domina, ablatiuo ab hac domina; et pluraliter nominatiuo hee domine, genitiuo harum -arum, datiuo hijs -abus, (fol.2v) accusatiuo has dominas, vocatiuo o domine, ablatiuo ab hijs dominabus.

Nominatiuo hic Thomas, genitiuo huius Thome, datiuo huic Thome, accusatiuo[1] hanc Thomam, vocatiuo o Thoma, ablatiuo ab hac Thoma.

Nominatiuo hic magister, genitiuo huius -tri, datiuo huic -tro, accusatiuo hunc -trum, vocatiuo o magister, ablatiuo ab hoc -tro; et pluraliter nominatiuo hij magistri, genitiuo horum magistrorum, datiuo hijs -tris, accusatiuo hos -tros, vocatiuo o -tri, ablatiuo ab hiis -tris.

Nominatiuo hic dominus, genitiuo huius -ni, datiuo huic -no, accusatiuo hunc dominum, vocatiuo o domine, ablatiuo ab hoc domino; et pluraliter nominatiuo hij domini, genitiuo horum dominorum, datiuo hijs dominis, accusatiuo hos dominos, vocatiuo o domini, ablatiuo ab hijs dominis.

Nominatiuo hic Laurencius, genitiuo huius -cij, datiuo huic -cio, accusatiuo hunc -cium, vocatiuo o Laurenti, ablatiuo ab hoc Laurencio.

Nominatiuo hoc scamnum, genitiuo huius -ni, datiuo huic -no, accusatiuo hoc scamnum, vocatiuo o -num, ablatiuo ab hoc scamno;

---

[1] -t- from s

et pluraliter nominatiuo hec scamna, genitiuo horum - norum, datiuo hijs -nis, accusatiuo hec scamna, vocatiuo o scamna, ablatiuo ab hijs scamnis.

Nominatiuo hic et hec sacerdos, genitiuo huius sacerdotis, datiuo huic sacerdoti, accusatiuo hunc et hanc sacerdotem, vocatiuo o sacerdos, ablatiuo ab hoc et ab hac sacerdote vel sacerdoti; et pluraliter nominatiuo hij et hee sacerdotes, genitiuo horum et harum -tum, datiuo hijs -tibus, accusatiuo hos et has -dotes, vocatiuo o -dotes, ablatiuo ab hijs -tibus.

Nominatiuo hic et hec et hoc felix, genitiuo huius felicis, datiuo huic -ci, accusatiuo hunc et hanc felicem et hoc felix, vocatiuo o felix, ablatiuo ab hoc et ab hac et ab[1] hoc felice vel felici; et pluraliter nominatiuo hij et hec felices et hec felicia, genitiuo horum et harum et horum felicium, datiuo hijs fe⌜li⌝cibus, accusatiuo hos et has felices et hec felicia, vocatiuo o felices et o felicia, ablatiuo ab hijs felicibus.

Nominatiuo hec manus, genitiuo huius -nus, datiuo huic -vi, accusatiuo hanc manum, vocatiuo o -nus, ablatiuo ab hac -nu; et pluraliter nominatiuo hee[2] manus, genitiuo harum manuum, datiuo hijs manibus, accusatiuo has manus, vocatiuo o manus, ablatiuo ab hijs manibus.

Nominatiuo hec res, genitiuo huius rei, datiuo huic rei, accusatiuo hanc rem, vocatiuo o res, ablatiuo ab hac re; et pluraliter nominatiuo hee res, genitiuo harum rerum, datiuo hijs rebus, accusatiuo has res, vocatiuo o res, ablatiuo ab hijs rebus.

Qwerby knowyst a pronown? For he is set for a nown and signyfyith neer a moche as a nown, and oþer qwyle receyuyth certeyne person. How many maneer pronownnys be þer? XV.

---

[1] -b from d

[2] MS ħ

Qwech xv? Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste, hic and is, meus tuus, suus, noster and vester, nostras and vestras. How many of þeise be primityuys and how many be[1] deriuatiuys? VIII be primitiuys and vij be diriuatiuys. Qwech viij be primitiuys? Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste, hic and hijs. And qwy be þi primitiuys? For þei take here begynnyng of noon oþer. Qwech be diriuatiuys? Meus, tuus, suus, noster and vester, nostras and vestras. And qwy be þei callyd diriuatiuys? For þei take here begynnyng of oþer, as of me comth meus, of tu comth tuus,
(fol.3r) of sui comth suus,[2] of nos comth noster and nostras, and of
211 vos comth vester and vestras. How many of theyse haue vocatyf case and how many wantyn? Fowre haue vocatyf case and alle oþer wantyn. Qwech iiij haue vocatyf case? Tu, meus, noster and nostras. Vnde versus:

Quatuor exceptis pronomina nulla vocabis;
Tu, meus et noster, nostras: hec sola vocantur.

How many personys be þer? Thre. Qwech iij? Þe furst, þe secunde, þe thrydde. Qwerby knowyst þe furst persone? For he spekyth of hymself as 'I' and 'we'. Qwerby knowyst þe
220 secunde persone? For he spekyth to oþer as 'þu' or 'ȝe'. Qwerby knowyst þe thrydde persone? For he spekyth of oþer as 'he' and 'þei'; and euery nown and euery pronown and euery participyl is þe thrydde persone owtakyn 'I' and 'we', 'þu' and 'ȝe', and þe vocatyf case. Vnde versus:

Terne persone generaliter omnis habetur,
Rectus set demas pronomina quatuor inde.

How many declensons of pronown be there? IIII. Qwech iiij? The furst, þe secunde, þe thrydde, þe fourt. Qwerby knowyst þe furst declenson of pronown?[3] For þe genityf case
230 singuler endyth in -i or in -is, and þe datyf in -i. How many

---

[1] MS de [2] MS suuus [3] MS prononown

pronownys hath he? Thre. Qwech iij? Ego, tu, sui. Qwerby knowyst þe secunde declenson of pronown? For þe genityf case singuler endyth in -ius or in -ius, and þe datyf in -i or in -e. How many pronownys hath he? V. Qwech v? Ille, ipse, iste, hic and is; and viij nownnys wit here componys qwech be vnus, vllus, totus, solus, alter, alius, quis and uter. How many of theyse nownys haue vocatyf case and how many wantyn? Thre haue vocatyf case and alle oþer wantyn. Qwech iij be þo? Vnus, totus and solus. Vnde
240 versus:

Pone vocatiuos cum totus, solus et vnus,
Sed non in reliquis quorum genitiuus in -ius.

Qwerby knowyst þe thrydde declenson of pronown? For be genityf case singuler endyth in -i in -e and in -i, and þe datyf in -o and in -e and in -o. How many pronownys hath he? V. Qwech v? Meus, tuus, suus, noster and vester; and note wel þat alle nown adiectiuys þat be declyned w^{t} thre dyuerse endynggys be declyned aftyr þis declenson. Qwerby knowyst þe fourt declenson? For þe genityf case singuler endyth in -atis and
250 þe datyf in -ati. How many pronownys hath he? To. Qwech to? Nostras and vestras; and a nown interrogatyf qwech is cuias, cuiatis. Qwat is cuias in Englysch? 'Of qwat folk'. Qwat is cuium in Englysch? 'Of qwat thyng'. Qwat is nostras in Englysch? 'A man or a woman of owre cuntre', and vestras is 'a man or a woman of 3our cuntre'. Versus:

Cuias de gente, cuium de re petit apte. |

(A note at the foot of fol.3^{r} informs us that, 'The nownys of þis part be in þe lef folwyng'; and at the foot of fol.3^{v} we are told to 'Turne ouyr to þe next lef'. The text of fol.4^{r-v} is accordingly inserted at this point.)

(fol.4^{r}) Nominatiuo ego, genitiuo mei vel mis, datiuo mihi, accusatiuo me, vocatiuo caret, ablatiuo a me; et pluraliter nominativo nos, genitiuo nostrum vel nostri, datiuo nobis, accusatiuo nos, vocatiuo caret, ablatiuo a nobis.

Nominatiuo tu, genitiuo tui vel tis, datiuo tibi, accusatiuo te, vocatiuo o tu, ablatiuo a te; et pluraliter nominatiuo vos, genitiuo vestrum vel vestri, datiuo vobis, accusatiuo vos, vocatiuo o vos, ablatiuo a vobis.

Nominatiuo caret, genitiuo sui, datiuo sibi, accusatiuo se, vocatiuo caret, ablatiuo a se; et pluraliter nominatiuo caret, genitiuo sui, et cetera.

Nominatiuo ille, -la, -lud; genitiuo illius; datiuo illi; accusatiuo illum, -lam, -lud; vocatiuo caret; ablatiuo illo, -la, -lo; et pluraliter nominatiuo illi, -le, -la; genitiuo illorum, -larum, -lorum; datiuo illis: accusatiuo illos, -las, -la; vocatiuo caret; ablatiuo ab hijs illis.

Nominatiuo ipse, ipsa, ipsum; genitiuo ipsius; datiuo ipsi; accusatiuo ipsum, -am, ipsum; vocatiuo caret; ablatiuo ipso, -a, -o; et pluraliter nominatiuo ipse, -e, -a; genitiuo ipsorum, -arum, -orum; datiuo ipsis; accusatiuo ipsos, ipsas, -a; vocatiuo caret; ablatiuo ab hijs ipsis.

Nominatiuo iste, -ta, -tud; genitiuo istius; datiuo isti; accusatiuo istum, -tam, -tud; vocatiuo caret; ablatiuo isto, ista, -to; et pluraliter nominatiuo isti, -te, ta; genitiuo istorum, -arum, -orum; datiuo istis; accusatiuo istos, -tas, -ta; vocatiuo caret; ablatiuo ab hijs istis.

Nominatiuo hic, hec, hoc; genitiuo huius; datiuo huic; accusatiuo hunc, hanc, hoc; vocatiuo caret; ablatiuo ab hoc et ab hac et ab hoc; et pluraliter nominatiuo hij, hee, hec;

genitiuo horum, harum, horum; datiuo hijs; accusatiuo hos, has, hec; vocatiuo caret; ablatiuo ab hijs.

Nominatiuo is, ea, id; genitiuo eius; datiuo ei; accusatiuo eum, eam, id; vocatiuo caret; ablatiuo eo, ea, eo; et pluraliter nominatiuo ei, ee, ea; genitiuo eorum, earum, eorum; datiuo eis; accusatiuo eos, eas, ea, vocatiuo caret; ablatiuo ab hijs eis.

Nominatiuo quis vel qui, que vel qua, quod vel quid; genitiuo cuius; datiuo cui; accusatiuo quem, quam, quod vel quid; vocatiuo caret; ablatiuo quo, qua, quo vel a qui; et pluraliter nominatiuo qui, que, que vel qua; genitiuo quorum, quarum, quorum; datiuo quis vel quibus; accusatiuo quos, quas, que vel qua; vocatiuo caret; ablatiuo a quis vel a quibus.

Nominatiuo quidam, quedam, quoddam vel quiddam; genitiuo cuiusdam; datiuo cuidam; accusatiuo quemdam, quamdam, quoddam vel quiddam; vocatiuo caret; ablatiuo quodam, quadam, quodam; et pluraliter nominatiuo quidam, quedam, quadam; genitiuo quorundam, quarundam, quorundam; datiuo quibusdam; accusatiuo quosdam, quasdam, quadam; vocatiuo caret; ablatiuo[1] ab hijs quibusdam.

Nominatiuo vnus, vna, vnum; genitiuo vnius; datiuo vni; accusatiuo vnum, -am, -um; vocatiuo vne, -a, -um; ablatiuo vno, -a, -o; and it hath no plurer nowmbyr.

Nominatiuo vllus, -a, -um; genitiuo v⌜l⌝lius; datiuo vlli; accusatiuo vllum, vllam, vllum; vocatiuo caret; ablatiuo vllo, vlla, vllo; et pluraliter nominatiuo vlli, vlle, vlla; genitiuo vllorum, vllarum, vllorum; datiuo vllis; accusatiuo vllos, vllas, vlla; vocatiuo caret; ablatiuo ab vllis.

---

[1] repeated

Nominatiuo meus, -a, -um; genitiuo mei, mee, -ei; datiuo meo, -ee, -o; accusatiuo meum, -am, -um; vocatiuo mi, -ea, -um; ablatiuo meo, -a, -o; et pluraliter nominatiuo mei, -ee, -a; genitiuo meorum, -arum, -orum; datiuo meis; accusatiuo meos, -as, -a; vocatiuo mei, -ee, -a; ablatiuo ab hijs meis.

320 Nominatiuo tuus, tua, tuum; genitiuo tui, tue, tui; datiuo tuo, tue, tuo; accusatiuo tuum, -am, -um; vocatiuo caret; ablatiuo tuo, -a, -o; et pluraliter nominatiuo tui, -e, -a; genitiuo tuorum, -arum, -orum; datiuo tuis; accusatiuo tuis, -as, -a; vocatiuo caret; ablatiuo ab hijs tuis.

Nominatiuo suus, -a, suum; genitiuo sui, sue, sui; datiuo suo, -e, suo;[1] accusatiuo suum, -am, -um; vocatiuo caret; ablatiuo suo, -a, -o; et pluraliter nominatiuo sui, -e, -a; genitiuo suorum, -arum, -orum; datiuo suis; accusatiuo suos, -as, -a; vocatiuo caret; ablatiuo ab hijs suis.|

(fol.4^{v}) Nominatiuo noster, nostra, nostrum; genitiuo nostri, -e,

331 -tri; datiuo nostro, -e, -o; accusatiuo nostrum, -am, -um; uocatiuo[2] noster, nostra, nostrum; ablatiuo nostro, -a, -o; et pluraliter nominatiuo nostri, -e, -a; genitiuo nostrorum, nostrarum, nostrorum; datiuo nostris;[3] accusatiuo nostros, nostras, nostra; vocatiuo nostri, nostre, -a; ablatiuo ab hijs nostris.

Nominatiuo vester, vestra, vestrum; genitiuo vestri, -e, -i; datiuo uestro, -e, -o; accusatiuo vestrum, -am, -um; vocatiuo caret; ablatiuo vestro, vestra, vestro; et pluraliter

340 nominatiuo uestri, -e, -a; genitiuo vestrorum, -arum, -orum; datiuo vestris; accusatiuo vestros, -as, vestra; vocatiuo caret; ablatiuo ab hijs vestris.

---

[1] MS so [2] caret ablatiuo canc. [3] -i- from o

Nominatiuo hic et hec nostras; genitiuo huius nostratis; datiuo huic nostrati; accusatiuo hunc et hanc nostratem; vocatiuo o nostras; ablatiuo ab hoc et ab hac nostrate vel nostrati; et pluraliter nominatiuo hij et hee nostrates; genitiuo horum et harum nostratum; datiuo hijs nostratibus; accusatiuo hos et has nostrates; vocatiuo o nostrates; ablatiuo ab hijs nostratibus.

350 Nominatiuo hic et hec vestras; genitiuo huius vestratis; datiuo huic vestrati; accusatiuo hunc et hanc vestratem; vocatiuo caret; ablatiuo ab hoc et ab hac -te vel -ti; et pluraliter nominatiuo hij et hee vestrates; genitiuo horum et harum -tum; datiuo hijs -tibus; accusatiuo hos et has vestrates; vocatiuo caret; ablatiuo ab hijs vestratibus.|

(fol.3^{v}) Qwerby knowyst a verbe? For it is declyned w^{t} moodd and tens and persone and betokenyth 'to do' or 'to suffyr' or 'to be'. How many maneer of verbys ben þere? V. Qwech v? Verbe actyf, verbe passyf, verbe neutyr, verbe deponent and

360 verbe comowne. Qwerby knowyst a verbe actyf? For it endyth as amo, put -r per-to and þanne is amor.
in -o and may take -r vpon O and make hym a passyf, Qwerby knowyst a verbe passyf? For it endyth in -r and may do awey -r and terne azen into hys actyf. Qwerby knowyst a verbe neuter? For he endyth in -o and may noon -r take vpon O nor make of hym no passyf. Qwerby knowyst a verbe neutyr-passyf? For he endyth in -o lyk an actyf and hath þe Englysch of þe passyf, as fio, fis, factus sum, fieri: 'to be mad'. Qwerby knowyst a verbe neutyr normal? For he folwyth no ryth rewle of coniugacyon; and vndyrstonde þat a verbe neutyr qwech hath

370 þe lettyr and þe significacyon of an actyf may haue a passyf voys in þe thrydde persone, as 'Þe weye is ronnyn', Via curritur. Vnde versus:

Neutrum quod transit in rem sermone carentem.
Ternam passiuam de se dat progredientem.

Qwerby knowyst a verbe deponent? For he endyth in -r lyke a passyf and hath þe Englysch of[1] an actyf, as loquor: 'I speke'; and in þe thrydde persone he may haue a passyf voys; as 'Þe lond is eryid', Terra aratur. Vnde versus:

Et deponencium passiuum dat documentum:
Sic Sermo fatur dicas, vt Campus aratur.

Qwerby knowyst a verbe comun? For it hath lettyr of þe passyf and Englysch bothe of þe actyf and of þe passyf,[2] as 'I kysse þe', Osculor te; 'And I am kyssyd of the', Et osculor a te. How many verbe comons be þer? As many as be conteyned in þe verse þat folwyn:

Largior, experior, veneror, moror, osculor, ortor,
Criminor, amplector, tibi sunt communia lector;
Si bene connumeres, interpretor, hospitor addes.

How ma(ys)t þu knowyn qwan þi verbe betokenyth 'to do' and qwan 'to suffyr'?[3] Qwan I haue ony of þeise vi Englysch wurdys, 'am', 'art', 'is', 'was', 'be' or 'were' ioyned to a verbe, thanne it betokenyth 'to suffyr'; and if noon of þo vj wurdys be joyned to þe verbe than it betokenyth 'to do'.

How many modys be þer? V. Qwech v? Indicatyf, imperatyf, optatyf,[4] coniunctyf and infenityf. Qwerby knowyst indicatyf mood? For it schewyth tale soth or lees and betokenyth askyng or tellyng; or qwanne I haue ony of theyse thre synes in my Latyin sicut, dum, quando, þe verbe þat folwyth schal be indicatyf mood. Vnde versus:

Indicat. vt quando, sicut, dum, cetera plura.

---

[1] MS on
[2] MS passyth
[3] MS suffyffyr
[4] MS octatyf

Qwerby knowyst imperatyf mood? For it preyith, byddyth, or
fol.5^{r}) co|mawndyth. Qwerby knowyst optatyf mood? For it welyth or
desiryth; and þeyse Englysch wurdys joyned to a verbe, 'wold',
'schold', 'mote' or 'at my wylle', and þeyse Latyin wurdys afor
a verbe, vtinam, ne, quatinus, osi, ar þe synes of optatyf mood.
Vnde versus:

'Wold', 'schold' dic opti, vtinam, ne, quatinus, osi.

Qwerby knowyst coniunctyf mood? For he is joyned to a noþer
verbe or a noþer verbe is joyned to hym; or qwan ony of þe Latyn[1]
410 wurdys þat folwyn in þe next come beforn a verbe, it schal be þe
coniunctyf mood.

Si, quamuis, quamquam tam(et)si, licet[2] atque priusquam,
Antequam an donec, vt, postquam sine quousque,
Cum, nisi, quam, acsi, quo coniungunt tibi dico.

Qwerby knowyst infenityf mood? For qwanne to verbis come
togeder w^{t}owte a relatyf or a coniunccyon, þe lattar schal be
infenityf mood. Also þis lytel wurd 'to' beforn a verbe is syne
of infenityf mood, as 'to loue', 'to rede'.

How many tens be þere? V. Qwech fyue? The present
420 tens, þe pretyrtens vnperfyth, þe pretyrtens perfyth, þe[3]
pretyrtens pluperfyth and þe futur tens. Qwerby knowyst þe
present tens? For he spekyth of tyme þat is now, as amo:
'I loue'. Qwerby knowyst pretertens vnperfyth? For it spekyth
of tyme vnperfythly passyd, as amabam: 'I louede'. Qwerby
knowyst þe pretyrtens perfyth? For it spekyth of tyme perfythly
pasyd, and hath þis Englysch wurd 'haue', as amaui: 'I haue
louyd'. Qwerby knowyst þe pretyrtens pluperfyth? For it
spekyth of tyme more þan perfythly passyd, and hath þis Englysch
wurd 'hadde', as amaueram: 'I had louyd'. Qwerby knowyst þe

---

[1] f canc. [2] tam(et)si, licet] MS tam silicet [3] per canc.

430 future tens? For it spekyth of tyme þat is to come, and hath þis Englysch wurd 'schal', as amabo: 'I schal louyn'.

How many nowmberys be þer of verbe? The singuler nowmbyr as amo, amas, amat; and þe plurer as amamus, -atis, -ant. How many personys be þer of verbe? Thre. The furst as amo, amamus, þe secunde as amas, amatis; and þe thrydde as amat, amant.

How many coniugacyons be þere? Foure. Qweche iiij? Þe furst, þe secunde, þe thrydde, þe fourt. Qwerby knowyst þe furst coniugacyon? For it hath A long beforn þe -re in 440 þe infenityf actyf voys or in þe imperatyf mood passyf voys, as amare. Qwerby knowyst þe secunde coniugacyon? For it hath E long aforn þe -re in þe infenityf mood actyf voys or in þe imperatyf mood passyf voys, as docere. Qwerby knowyst þe thrydde coniugacyon? For it hath[1] E schort beforn þe -re in þe infenityf mood actyf voys or in þe imperatyf mood passyf voys, as legere. Qwerby knowyst þe fourt coniugacyon? For it hath I long beforn þe -re in þe infenityf actyf voys or in þe inperatyf mood passyf voys, as audire. Fro þeise rewlys be owtakyn alle verbe neutyr enormalys, for þei folow no ryth 450 rewle of coniugacyon. Qwech be verbe neutyr enormalys? Patet per versus:

(fol.5^{v}) Sum, volo, fert et edo sunt enormal(i)a credo.

And note wel þat alle þe componys of þeyse verbys fayle ryth rewle of coniugacyon, saue too componys of edo qwech be excedo and comedo. Versus:

Cum cunctis natis; edo nata set excipiantur,
Excedo nam comedo regularia stare probantur.

---

[1] þe thrydde canc.

And how many componys haue sum, es, fui? It is schewyd be þe versys folwyng:

460 Sum neutri generis est et sua cuncta creata
Quorum per metrum pateant tibi (cuncta) signata:
Adsum, sum presens; absum, dum cisto remotus;
Presum, preficio; sed possum, robore tutus;
Subsum, subcumbo; multis obsum quia nocendo;
Insum componens intus, sum dicere debes,
Hijs quibus intersum, me presentem, bene pendo;
Quod restat superest. Iam non tibi plurima pando.

Also fro þe rewle of coniugacyons be owtake many verbe defectiuys, as queso, 'I beseche', hath no more but quesumus; aue, 'heyl', 470 hath no more but auete,[1] aueto, auetote; salue, 'heyl', hath no more but saluete, salueto, saluetote; vale, 'farwel', hath no more but valete, -to, valetote; and memento, 'haue in mynde', hath no more but mementote.

Amo, amas, amam . . . . . .

(Fols.5^{v} line 20 to 10^{v} line 20 contain paradigms of amo, doceo, lego, audio, sum, possum, volo, nolo, malo, fero, edo and fio, with their English equivalents. I have given only the beginning and end of this section here, and have omitted the remainder.)

(fol.10^{v}) . . . . . vt facturus, as 'for to be mad hereaftyr'.

And note wel for a rewle þat þe futer tens of indicatyf mood in þe thrydde and þe fourt coniugacyon turnyth A into E in alle personys singuler and plurer saue in þe furst persone of þe singuler nowmbyr, as audiam, -es, -et, and in þe futer 480 tens of þe optatyf[2] mood and þe present tens of coniunctyf mood he kepyth stylle A in alle personys, as audiam, -as, -at.

---

[1] MS aueto

[2] MS oftatyf

Qwerby knowyst an aduerbe? For he is cast to a verbe and fulfyllyth þe significacyon of þe verbe. How many degre of compar^y^son hath aduerbe? III. Þe posityf, þe comparatyf and þe superlatyf. How knowyst þe posityf degre of aduerbe? For he endyth in Englysch most comunly in '-ly' as 'fayrly', 'goodly', 'swetely' and soche oþer. How knowyst þe comparatyf degre? For ⌜he endyth in Englysch⌝ in -er or in -ir as 'swetter', 'betyr'. How knowyst þe superlatyf degre? For
490 he endyth in Englysch in '-est' as 'fayrest', 'fowlest' and soch othyr.

Qwerby knowyst a participyl? For he takyth part of nown, part of verbe and part of bothe. Qwat takyth he of nown? Gendyr and case. Qwat of þe verbe? Tyme and significacyon. And quat of bothe? Nowmbyr and persone. How many tens be þer of participyl? III. Qwech iij? Þe present tens, þe pretertens and þe futer tens. Qwerby knowyst þe participyl of present tens? For he endyth in Englysch in '-yng' or in '-and' as 'redyng', 'louand', and in Latyn in -ens or in -ans, as legens, amans.
500 Qwerby knowyst þe participyl of pretyrtens? For al soch scort Englysch wurdys, 'loued', 'red', 'tawt', 'herd', arn synes of þe pretertens of partici(pyl), and endyth in Latyin in -tus
(fol.11r) or in -sus, as lectus, visus. Qwerby knowyst a participyl of þe futur tens? For if he be a participyl of þa actyf voys he hath þe Englysch of þe infenityf mood of þe actyf voys and endyth in Latyne in -rus, as lecturus, 'for to redyn'; and if it be a participyl of þe passyf voys he hath þe Englysch of þe infenityf mood of þe passyf voys, as legendus, 'for to be red'.

How many participulys hath a verbe actyf? Too. Qwech ij?
510 On of þe present tens endyng in -ens or in -ans, as legens, amans;

and a noþer of þe futer tens endyng in -rus, as lecturus, amaturus. How many participulys hath a verbe passyf? Too. Qwech ij? On of þe preter tens endyng in -tus or in -sus, as lectus, visus; and a noþer of þe futer tens endyng in -dus, as legendus, videndus. How many participul hath a verbe neutyr? Too. Qwech ij? On of þe present tens endyng in -ens or in -ans, as currens, stans; and a noþer of þe futer endyng in -rus, as cursurus, staturus. How many participul hath a verbe deponent? Thre. Qwech iij? On of þe present tens endyng in -ens or in -ans, as loquens, auxilians; a noþer of þe pretertens endyng in -tus or in -sus, as locutus, lapsus; and a participyl of þe futer tens endyng in -rus, as locuturus. How many participul hath a verbe comun? IIII. Qwech iiij? On of þe present endyng in -ens or in -ans, as experiens, hortans; a noþer of þe pretertens endyng in -tus, as expertus; and too futuris on endyng in -rus, as hortaturus, and a noþer in -dus, as hortandus. How many endynggis be þer of participyl? VI. Qweche vj? Too of þe present tens endyng in -ens and in -ans; too of pretertens endyng in -tus or in -sus; and too of þe futer endyng in -rus or in -dus. Vnde versus:

-Ens, -ans presentis semper dic temporis esse;
-Tus, -sus preteriti; -rus, -dus dic esse futuri;
-Ens, -ans, -rus et agunt, -tus, -sus, -dus et paciuntur.

[(Q)werby knowyst a coniunccyon? For it joyneth or disioyneth oþer partis of reson and ordeynyth in hem perfyth sentence. Qweche (be) þe coniunccyons þat joynyn? Al þe wurdys þat be in 'Das copulatiuas'.]

Nominatiuo hic et hec et hoc amans; genitiuo huius amantis; datiuo huic amanti; accusatiuo hunc et hanc amantem et hoc amans; vocatiuo o amans; ablatiuo ab hoc et ab hac et ab hoc amante

vel amanti; et pluraliter nominatiuo hij et hee amantes et hec amancia; genitiuo horum et harum et horum amancium; datiuo hijs amantibus; accusatiuos hos et has amantes et hec amancia; vocatiuo o amantes et o amancia; ablatiuo ab hijs amantibus.

Nominatiuo hic et hec et hoc legens; genitiuo huius -gentis; datiuo huic -genti; accusatiuo hunc et hanc -gentem et hoc -gens; vocatiuo o -gens; ablatiuo ab hoc et ab hac et ab hoc -gente vel -ti; et pluraliter nominatiuo hij et hee -gentes et hec
550 -gencia; genitiuo horum et harum et horum -gencium; (datiuo hijs) -tibus; accusatiuo hos et has -gentes et hec -gencia; vocatiuo o -gentes et o -gencia; ablatiuo ab hijs legentibus.

Nominatiuo lectus, lecta, lectum; genitiuo lecti, -te, -ti; datiuo lecto, -te, -to; accusatiuo lectum, lectam, lectum; vocatiuo lecte, -ta, -tum; ablatiuo lecto, -ta, -to; et pluraliter nominatiuo lecti, -te, -ta; genitiuo lectorum, -tarum, -torum; datiuo lectis; accusatiuo lectos, -tas, -ta; vocatiuo -ti, -te, -ta; ablatiuo ab his -tis.

Nominatiuo lecturus, -ra, -rum; genitiuo -ri, -re, -ri;
560 datiuo lecturo, -re, -ro; accusatiuo -rum, -ram, -rum; vocatiuo -re, -ra, -rum; ablatiuo -ro, -ra, -ro; et pluraliter nominatiuo lecturi, -re, -ra; genitiuo -rorum, -rarum, -rorum; datiuo lecturis; accusatiuo -ros, -ras, -ra; vocatiuo -ri, -re, -ra; ablatiuo ab hijs lecturis. |

(fol.11^{v}) (N)ominatiuo legendus, -genda, -gendum; genitivo -gendi, -gende, -gendi; datiuo -do, -de, -do; accusatiuo -dum, -dam, -dum; vocatiuo legende, -da, -dum; ablatiuo -do, -da, -do; et pluraliter nominatiuo legendi, -de, -da; genitiuo -dorum, -darum, -dorum; datiuo hijs legendis; accusatiuo legendos,
570 -das, -da; vocatiuo -di, -de, -da; ablatiuo ab hijs legendis.

(Q)werby knowyst a coniunccyon? For it joyneth or disioyneth oþer partys of reson and ordeynyth in hem perfyth sentence. Qwech be þo coniunccyons þat ioynyn? Alle þe wurdys þat be in 'Da copulatiuas'. And qwech be þo þat disioynyn? Alle þe wurdys in 'Da disiunctiuas'. Qwat partys of reson joyne þei or dis(i)oyne? Nownys, pronownys, verbys and participulys. Qwan joyne þei or disioyne? Qwan ony coniunccyons of joynyng or disioynyng come betwyn too nownys or too pronownys or too verbis or too participulys. 'Da
580 copulatiuas vt[1] et, que, atque, at, ac, ast. Da disiuncciuas vt aut, ve, vel, ne, nec, an, neque. Da expletiuas vt quidem, equidem, saltem, videlicet, quam(quam), quamuis, quoque, autem, porro, licet, tamen, sin autem. Da causales vt si, etsi, eciamsi,[2] siquidem, quando, quandoquidem, quin, quineciam, quatinus, sin, seu, siue, niue, nam, namque, ni, nisi, enim,[3] ne, set, interea, quamobrem, presertim, item, itemque, ceterim, alioquin, preteria. Da racionales vt ita, itaque, enim, et enimvero,[4] quia, quapropter, quoniam, quidem, quippe, nempe, ergo, igitur, silicet, videlicet, preteria, propterea, idcirco.'

590 (Q)werby knowyst a preposicyon? For he is set beforn oþer partys of reson and seruyth to certeyn case. To qwath case seruyth a preposicyon?[5] To þe accusatyf case, to þe ablatyf, or to boþin. Qweche preposicyons serue to þe accusatyf case? Alle þe wurdys in 'Da preposicyones accusatiui'. ⌜Qwech preposicyons serue to þe ablatyf case? Alle þe wurdis þat be in 'Da preposiciones casus ablatiui'. Qwech wurdes serue to bothe casys? Alle þe wurdis þat be in 'Da vtriusque casus preposiciones'. Qwan wyl 'in' serue to accusatyf case

---

[1] MS adds que

[2] MS eciam . si.

[3] MS ne

[4] MS etenim . vero [et enimvero]

[5] MS adds to

and quanne to þe ablatyf? Qwan 'in' comth w^t a 'to' it wyl serue to þe accusatyf case, and qwan 'in' comth alone he wyl serue to þe ablatyf case. Vnde versus:

In campo curro bene dicis si sis in illo;
Si sis exterius in campum fit tibi cursus:
⌜'Into' vult quartum, sine 'to' iu(n)gito sextum.⌝ [1]

'Da preposiciones casus accusatiui. Ad, aput, ante, aduersum, cis, citra, circum, circa, contra, erga, extra, inter, intra, infra, iuxta, ob, prope, propter, secundum, post, trans, vltra, ⌜preter⌝, supra, circiter, vsque, secus, penes. Da preposiciones casus ablatiui. A, ab, abs, cum, coram, clam, de, e, ex, pro, pre, palam, sine, absque, tenus. Da vtriusque casus preposiciones vt in, sub, super, et subter.'

(Q)werby knowyst an interieccyon? For it lyth among oþer partys of reson and betokenyth passyon of sowle w^t an vnperfyth voyis, and betokenyth joye or sorow or dred or wunderyng or indignacyon, as 'aha', 'alas', 'welawey', 'out out', 'owgh', 'so howgh', and soch oþer.

(H)ow many acordys ben þere of grameer? Fyue. Qwech v? The furst betwyn þe nominatyf case and þe verbe; the secunde betwyn þe substantyf and þe adiectyf; þe thredde þe relatyf and þe antsedent; þe fowrt betwyn þe[2] superlatyf degre and þe genityf case folwyng; þe fyfte be(twyn) þe nown partityf or þe nown distributyf and þe genityf case þat folw^t. In how many acorde þe nominatyf case and þe verbe? In too. In qwech too? In nowmbyr and persone. Vnde versus:

Vult in persona, numero rectus similari
Cum personali verbo sibi voce sequente.
Non pones rectum sine verbo, per Precianum,
Nec personale verbum pones sine recto.

---

[1] added at foot of page. [2] re canc.

(fol.12^{r}) In how many schal þe substantyf and þe adiectyf acordyn?

In thre. In qwech iij? In gendyr, nowmbyr and case.

Vnde versus:

Cum substantiuis tribus adiectiua locabis,
In casu, genere, numero debes retinere.

In how many schal þe relatyf and þe antecedent acorde? In thre. In qwech thre? In gender, nowmbyr and persone.

Vnde versus:

Antecedenti tribus hijs coniunge relatum
Persona, numero; sit genus hijsque[1] datum.

In how many schal þe superlatyf degre and þe genityf case þat folwit acorde? In on. In qwech on? In gendyr. Vnde versus:

Omne superlatum partitiue recitatum
Semper vult generi genitiuo sociari:
Vt pateat verum sic: Est Deus optima rerum.
Ymmo superlatum propria vi quando locatur
Per genus hoc fixo precedenti famulatur.
Naso dat[2] verum: Quid agis dulcissime rerum.

In how many schal þe nown partityf and þe genityf þat folwyt acorde? In on. In gendyr. Vnde versus:

Conformes genere dic cum casu genitiuo
Nunc partitiuum, veluti Venit vna sororum.
Sic in gramatica dicas concordia quina.

---

[1] MS hijs quoque

[2] MS adds hoc

D. Cambridge, Trinity College, MS. O.5.4, fols.4^{v}-6^{v}

(This text of the Accedence forms part of a larger composite work, the remainder of which is given as text DD.)

(fol.4^{v}) How many maner partyes of reson bu ther? Eyghte: noun, pronoun, verbe, aduerbe, participle, coniunccion, preposicion, interieccion. How many of these partyes be declynyd and how many vndeclynyd? Foure be declined, videlicet noun, pronoun, verbe and participle; and foure be vndeclined, videlicet aduerbe, coniunccion, preposicion, interieccion.

How knowyste a noun substantyf? A party of reson that betokenyth substaunce wyth qualite and is declined wyth case and article; and so the name of euery thyng in the world is a noun substantyf. How many maner of nounes be ther? Tweyne: noun adiectyf and noune substantyf. How knowyst a noun substantyf? Euery word that is declined wyth on article or to atte moste, as hic magister, hic et hec sacerdos. How knowest a noun adiectyf? Euery word that is declined by thre articles or by thre diuerse endyngis in o case, as hic et hec et hoc felix, other as bonus, -na, -num. How many thyngis falleth to a noun? Sixe by the 'Donet': qualite, comparison, gendre, noumbre, fygure and case. How knowest a qualite in noun? A manere of knowyng by the whych me knowyth whether a noun be propure or appellatyf, id est comyn. Propure, ut Roma; comyn, as silua.

How many degrees of compar(i)son be ther? Thre, uidelicet posityf, comparatyf^e^, superlatyf. How knowest the posytyf degre? A noun adiectyf that bytokenyth qualite or quantite wythoute eny echyng, as 'good', 'fayre', 'whyte', 'black'. How knowest the comparatyf degre? A noun adiectyf that bytokenyth qualite or quantite wyth sumwhat echyng, as 'betyr', 'werse'. How knoweste the superlatyf degre? A noun adiectyf that bytokenyth qualite or quantite wyth most echyng, as 'fayrest', 'foulest', 'best','worste'.

What case wyll the comparatyf degre haue after hym? An ablatyf case of eyther noumbre wythoute a preposicion, as 'I wyser than my brother am feyrour than al my felowes', Ego sapiencior fratre meo sum pulchrior omnibus sociis meis. Or ellys wyth a nominatyf case and thys coniunccion quam comyng bytwene wyth sum, es, fui, as Sum sapiencior quam tu vna leccione. Of what case of the posityf degre schall the comparatyf be formed? Other whyle of the genityf case and other whyle of the datyf case. When schall he be formed of the genityf case? Whenne the noun of the posityf degre is the secunde declunson, as albus, -ba, -bum, genitiuo albi, addita -or, fit albior. Whenne of the datyf? Whenne the noun of the posytyf degre is the thridde declunson, as hic et hec fortis et hoc forte genitiuo huius fortis, datiuo huic forti, addita -or, fit forcior; ^sed iuuenis facit iunior.^

What case wole the superlatyf degre haue after hym? A genityf case plurel other a genityf case singuler of a noun collectyf, as Ego pulcherimum animalium sum sapientissimus istius comitiue.[1] Of what case of the posytyf degre schall

[1] -mit- from met; W canc.

the superlatyf be formed? Other whyle of the nominatyf case and other whyle of the genityf. Whenne of the nominatyf case? Whenne the nominatyf case endyth in -r onlych in singuler noumbre, masculyn gendre, as niger, sette ther-to -rimus, thenne hyt is nigerimus. How many be outtake of thys rewle? Tweyne, videlicet dexter et sinister ⌜et memor⌝ that makyth the superlatyf degre in -timus, as dextimus ⌜vel -terrimus⌝ et sinistimus ⌜vel -terrimus et memor, memorissimus⌝. Versus:

Cum tenet -r rectus -rimus est illi sociandus,
Excipias dexter quod dat -timus[1] atque sinister.

Whenne schall he be formed of the genityf case? Whenne the posityf endyth not in -r but in anothyr letter, as albus, -ba, -bum, genitiuo albi, sette to S and -simus, thenne hyt is albissimus; ⌜but maturus maketh -rimus, superus -rimus and vetus veterimus⌝. How many be outetake of thys reule? Fiue, wyth hure compounes. Whyche be they? Facilis,[2] agilis, gracilis, humilis and similis, ⌜but cessus maketh -simus⌝. How maketh they hure superlatyf? In -limus. Of what case schall the superlatyf be formed? Of the nominatyf case, as facilis, do awey the -s and sette ther-to -imus and that makyth facilimus.

Dant tibi quinque -limus[3] signantur nomine f-a-g-u-s,
Et sua composita tibi non sunt pretereunda.

How many gendres be in a noun? Seuene, videlicet masculin, femynyn, neutre, comyn of tweyne, comyn of thre, dubie and epycen. How knoweste the masculyn? For he is declynyd by hic, the femynyn by hec, the neutre by hoc, the comyn of tweyn by hic and hec, the comyn of thre that is declinid by hic and hec and hoc,

---

[1] vel terimus added later and not part of verse.

[2] possibly over an erasure

[3] que canc.

the epycen that word[1] that bytokenyth the male and the female vnder on article, as hic passer for the he sparwe and hic passer for the heo sparowe. How knowyste the dubye gendre? That word that is declined by hic and hec and vel coniunccion goyng bytwene, as hic vel hec dies. How many nounes be ther of dubye gendre? As many as be in these verse sewynge.

Versus:

Margo diesque, silex, cortex panteraque, dama,
Finis cum clunis dubium genus ista notabunt.
Singula sunt dubii sed sunt pluralia primi.
Margo diesque, silex,[2] cortex panteraque, dama[3].
Cum genere debes flectendo tenere.
Quamuis pro dubijs hec antiqui posuere,
Damaque pantera semper dicas epicena.

Bote alle these nounes be comyn gendyr of tweyne, out-take pantera et dama wheche ben epycen gendre by newe grammer.

How many noumbres hastow? Tweyne, singuler and plurel. How knowystow the singuler? That at bytokenyth o thynge. How knowystowe the plurell? That at bytokenyth many thynges. How many maners of figures hastow? Thre. Simple, compound and decompound. How knowyst the symple? A party by the whych me knowyth whether a word be or not, as amo. Compound? Figure by the whych me knowyth whether a word be compounyd, as peramo. Decompound? Whenne a word is compound of a word that is compound byfore, as magnanimitas.

How many case hastowe? Sixe, the nominatyf, genitif, datyf, accusatyf, vocatyfe, ablatyf. How knoweste the nominatyf case? A word that comyth byfore the verbe and the dede of the verbe passyth oute of hym, that schall be nominatyf case. On

---

[1] two letters canc. [2] p canc. [3] c canc.

another maner a word/ bytokenyth doyng or suffryng, the word that doth or suffreth schall be nominatyf case, as 'The maister sytteth on the benche', Magister sedet super scamnum.

How knoweste the genityf case? By my signes, as 'of' after a noun substantyf, a noun partytyf, a distributyf, a noun of superlatyf degre and after sum, es, fui be sygnes of the genityf case. Ensaumple 'of' after a noun substantyf, as 'The poynte of thys knyf is dulle', Mucro istius cultelli est obtusus. Ensample after a noun partytyf, as 'Thys man is on of creatures', Iste homo est vna creaturarum. Ensample after a noun distributyf, as 'Euerych of vs schall haue hys mede', Quilibet nostrum habebit suum premium. Ensample after a noun of superlatyf degre, as 'Thys man is fayrest of creatures', Iste homo est pulcherima creaturarum. Ensample after sum, es, fui, as 'Thys man is of fayre berynge', Iste homo est pulchre gesture. How knowest the genityf case in another manere? Whenne tweyne nounes substantyfys comyth togedyr and that on be hauer of that other, the noun that bytokenyth hauer schall be genityf case, as .'The maistres cloke is rede', Armilausa magistri est rubea. Also wordes that bytokenyth emtynesse[1] or fullenesse, byggyng or syllyng, reprehendyng or vndernymynge, and verbes that | haue strengthe to constre wyth genityf case, (fol.5r) as misereor, -reris, dominor, -raris and other suche wyll constrew w^t genityf case.

How knowest datyf case? Whenne this Englysh 'to' comyth byfor a noun, pronoun or participle, and no preposicion i-sette for 'to', thenne schall 'to' be datyf case, as 'I 3af a peny to a poure man', Ego erogaui denarium pauperi. Also wordes

---

[1] of canc.

that bytokenyth byddyng, hotyng or comaundyng, lyttlynesse or vnlittlynesse, euenesse or vneuenesse, profyt or vnprofyt wyll constreu wyth datyf case, and verbes that haue strengthe to constreu wyth datyf case, as placeo, noceo and other suche.

140 How knowest accusatyf case? Whenne I haue noun, pronoun or participle comyng in a reson after a verbe, gerundyf, participle or supyn and the dede of eny of hem passe into hym, hit schall be accusatyf case. Ensample after a verbe, as 'I loue my mayster', Amo meum magistrum; Laboro amando socium meum; Sum amans fratrem meum; Vado amatum compatrem meum. Also whenne I haue a noun betokenyng party of mannys body comyng in construccyon after a noun adiectyf, a verbe neutre or verbe passyf, the party of the body schall be accusatyf case, as 'I whyte[1] the face, ake the hede, am hurte the legge', Ego albus
150 faciem, doleo caput, ledor pedem uel tibiam. Also whenne I haue eny preposicion that wole seruen to accusatyf case. // NEW PARAGRAPH How knowest the vocatyf case? Whenne me clepyth or callyth, as 'Wylyam come hydyr', Willelme veni huc.

How knowyste the ablatyf case? By my sygnes 'than' and 'by', 'wyth', 'in' and 'of', 'thorw', 'fro', and 'vnder' and 'for'; 'thanne' and 'by' after a comparatyf degre schall be ablatyf case wythoute a preposicion. Ensample as 'I am wyser thanne my brother by a dayes lernynge', Sum sapiencior fratre meo erudicione vnius diei. 'Of' after a verbe, gerundyf,
160 partyciple or supyn schal be ablatyf case wyth a preposicion, as 'We be louyd of the maystre', Nos diligimur a magistro et cetera. Also whenne I haue any preposicion that wol serue to ablatyf case or any verbe that hath strengthe to constreu wyth ablatyf case, as:

---

[1] I canc.

Vescitur et fruitur, et cetera.

Also wordes that bytokenyth fulness or emtynesse, byyng or sellyng, reprehendyng or vndernymyng.

How many declynsones hastow in the noun? Fyue. The fyrste is of the whych the genityf case singuler and datyf endyth in -e, accusatif in -am, the vocatyf in -a, the ablatyf in -a; the nominatyf plurel in -e, genityf in -arum, the datyf in -is, the accusatyf in -as, the vocatyf in -e, the ablatyf in -is. The secunde declynson is of the wheche ⌜the genityf singuler endyth in -i, the datyf in -o, the accusatyf in -vm⌝; whenne the ⌜nominatyf⌝ case endyth in -r or in -m the vocatyf schall be lych hym; whenne the nominatyf endyth in -vs, the vocatyf endyth in -e; and whenne ther is a propre name endyng in -ius the vocatyf schall ende in -i; the ablatyf in -o.

The nominatyf plurell schall ende in -i or -a, the genityf in -or, the datyf in -is, the accusatyf in -os or in -a, the vocatyf in -i or in -a, the ablatyf in -is. The thrydde declynson is of the whych the genityf singuler endyth in -is, the datyf in -i, the accusatyf in -em or in -im, the vocatyf schal be lyche the nominatyf, the ablatyf in -e or in -i; the nominatyf plurell in -es or in -a, the genityf in -vm or in -ium, the datyf in -bus, the accusatyf in -es or in -a, ⌜the vocatyf in -es or in -a⌝, the ablatyf in -bus. The fourthe declynson is of the which the genityf case singuler endyth in -vs, datyf in -vi, the accusatyf in -vm, the vocatyf in -vs, the ablatyf in -v; the nominatyf plurell in -vs, the genityf in -vum, the datyf in -bus, the accusatyf in -vs, the vocatyf also, the ablatyf in -bus. The fyfthe declynson is of the which the genityf case singuler endyth in -ei, the datyf also,

the accusatyf in -em, the vocatyf in -es, the ablatyf in -e; the nominatyf plurel in -es, ⌜the genityf plurel in -erum, the datyf in -bus, the accusatyf in -es,⌝ the vocatyf in -es, the ablatyf in -bus.

How knowest a pronoun? A party of reson[1] declynyd, the whych is sette for a propre name and reseueth certayn person.
How many pronounes be ther? XV: ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste, hic and is, meus, tuus, suus, noster and vester, nostras and vestras. How many of these be prymytyuis and how many diriuatiuez? VIII be primitiues, videlicet ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste, hic and is, and vij beth deriuatyfys, videlicet meus, tuus, suus, noster and vester, nostras and vestras. How many of these primityfys be demonstratyfys? Ego, tu, iste and hic. And wheche be onlych relatyfys? Is and sui. How many of these be othyr whyle relatyf and other whyle demonstratyf? Tweyne, videlicet ille and ipse. Whenne is ipse demonstratyf?
Whenne ipse is y-sette wyth a substantyf in the same reson, as Ipse homo currit. Butte whenne a reson cometh tofore and another folwyth and ipse be sette in the reson folwyng wyth an et coniuncion sette byfore, thenne ipse is a relatyf, as Vir currit et ipse mouetur. In the same manner schall ille be a relatyf and othyr whyle a demonstratyf. How many of these vij deriuatyfys be poscessiues? V, videlicet meus, tuus, suus, noster and vester; and nostras and vestras bytokenyth onlych folk.

How many thynges falleth to a pronoun? VI by the
'Donette', videlicet qualite, gendre, noumbre, figure, person and case. Whyche be the qualitees in pronoun? A certeyn

---

[1] en canc.

qualite and an vncerteyn. How knowest a certeyn qualite? A party by the wheche me knowyth whenne a pronoun is certeyn person, as ego. How the vncerteyn? A proprete by that me knowyth whenne a pronoun is of vncerteyn person, as ille. How many gendres hastow in pronoun? V, masculyn as iste, feminine as ista, neutre as istud, comyn of too as hic et hec nostras, -atis, comyn of thre, as ego, tu, sui. How many noumbres hastow in pronoun? Tweyne as in noun. How many
230 figures haste in pronoun? Tweyne, the symple as quis, the compoune as quisquis. How many persones hastow in pronoun? Thre in the singuler and thre in the plurell, as ego, tu, sui, nos, vos, illi. Ego and nos for the fyrst person, tu and vos for the secunde, ille and illi for the thrydde. How knowest the fyrst person of the pronoun? That that speketh of hemself. How the secunde? That that speche is made to. How the thrydde? That that speche is made of. And wyte well that alle nounez, pronounez and participles be the thrydde person outtake 'I' and 'thu', 'we' and 'ye', and the vocatyf case.
240 How many case hastow in pronoun? As many as in noun.

How many declynsons haste in pronoun? Feure. The fyrste of the whych the genityf case singuler endyth in -i or in is, the datyf in -i. How many pronounez be ther of the fyrste declynson? Thre, videlicet ego, tu, sui.[1] Which is the secunde? Of the which the genityf case singuler endyth in -ius vel-ius, the datyf in -i uel in -e. How many pronounez hath he? Fyue, videlicet ille, ipse, iste, hic and is, and viij nounes wyth hure compounez, videlicet vnus, vllus, totus,

---

[1] W canc. with a paraph mark over it

solus, alter and alius, quis and vter et eorum composita.
How knowyst the thrydde declynson? Of the whych the genityf
case singuler endyth[1] in -i and in -e and in -i, the datyf in
-o and in -e and -o; and he hath v pronounes vnder (hym),
videlicet meus, tuus, suus, noster and vester. Wheche is the
furth? Of the whych the genityf case endyth in -atis and the
datyf in -ati; and he hath ij pronounes vnder hym, videlicet
nostras, -atis, and vestras, -atis, et vnum nomen cuias, -iatis.
(fol.5[v]) How many nounes of askynge haste? VIII, videlicet quis,
qualis, quantus, cuius, cuias, quid, quotus and quot. Wherof
asketh quis? Of substance, as 'Hoo techyth in the scole?
The mayster', Quis docet in scola? Magister. Wherof asketh
qualis? Of maner of thyng, as 'What maner man is thy fadyr?',
Qualis est pater tuus? 'A good man', Bonus; or ellys 'Such
as thy fadyr', Talis qualis pater tuus est. Wherof asketh
quantus? Of muchelnesse of thynge, as 'How moche is thy
brothur?', Quantus est frater tuus? 'As muche as thy fadyr',
Tantus quantus est pater tuus. Wherof asketh cuius? Of
possessyon of thyng, and thenne yif hyt bytokenyth possession
of a noun substantyf me schal answere by a genityf case, as
Cuius liber est iste? 'The maystres', Magistri, Ricardi,
rectoris, vicarii. Whenne hyt maketh askyng of possession of
a noun adiectyf, thenne me schall answere by a pronoun possessyf,
as 'Hoos cloke is thys?', Cuius armilausa est ista? Mea, tua,
sua. Et declinatur sic: nominatiuo, cuius, -ia, -ium;
accusatiuo cuium, -ia, -ium; ablatiuo cuia. Wherof asketh
cuias? Of a manere of folk, as 'Of what manere folk art thu?',
Cuias est tu? 'Englis', Anglicus, or 'Of Englis', De anglicana

---

[1] in e and canc.

gente. Wherof asketh quid? Of diuision of a thyng, as 'What thyng is a man?', Quid est homo? 'A dedlych best and resonable', Animal racionale. Quid est animal? Substancia animata sencibilis. Otherwhyle quid asketh of dede of the verbe, as Quid agit mater? Docet, legit et cetera. Where⌜of⌝ asketh quotus? Of ordre, as 'How sytteth the mayster atte mete?', Quotus sedet magister in prandio? 'The firste', Primus homo et cetera. 'He sytte today as he satte yurstay', Totus sedet hodie quotus sedebat heri. Other whyle of noumbre, as [1] 'Wyth how many com the busshopp to toune?' And thenne hyt is to answere by an ablatyf case absolute, as Quotus venit episcopus ad villam? Se xx^{o}. Se xl^{o} et cetera. Wherof asketh quot? Of noumbre, as 'How many scolers be in the scole?', Quot scolares sunt in scola? XX, XL^{a}, C, et cetera.

How knowest a verbe? A party of reson that bytokenyth doyng or suffryng and is declined wyth moode and tyme w^{t}oute case, as 'I love the for I am loued of the', Amo te quia amor a te. How many thyngys falleth to a verbe? Seuene, videlicet moode, coniugacion, gendyr, noumbre, figure, tyme, and person. How many moodes bu ther? V. Wheche v? Indicatyf, imperatyf, optatyf, coniunctyf, and infinityf. How knowyst indicatyf mode? That at telleth or shewyth, that doth or hath do or shal do, suffreth or hath suffred or shall suffre, as 'I loue', amo; 'I am loued', amor. How knowyste imperatyf mode? That at byddyth or commaundeth, as 'Go hens', Vade hinc. How knowyst the optatyf? That at wyllyth or desyryth, as 'God wolde that I were a good man', Vtinam essem bonus homo. Whyche be the wordes that serue to the optatyf mode? Vtinam, ac, quatinus, oti and o. How knowyst the coniunctyf mode? That at is

---

[1] wh canc.

junyd to another mode wyth an et coniunccion. Wheche be the wordes of Englys that serue to the coniunctyf mode? 'Yif', 'thouȝ', 'bote', 'for te', 'that', 'whenne'. In Latyn vt, si, cum, quamquam, quamuis, licet, nisi, quod, donec, quosque, priusquam, antequam, postquam, an, quando ac dum, sicut et cetera plura. How knowest the infinityf mode? Whenne ther comyth two verbes togedre wythout and et coniunccion sette bytwene, the lattor verbe schall be infinityf mode, as 'I here the mayster teche scolers', Audio magistrum docere scolares.

How many coniugacions hastowe? Foure. The fyrst ys that hath an A longe byfore the -re or the -ri in the infinityf mode, as amare or amari. How many be outtake of thys rule? Foure verbes actyues wyth hure passiues, videlicet dare, venundare, pessundare and circumdare. How knowest the secunde? That is the wheche hath an E longe byfor the -re or -ri in the infinityf mode, as docere or doceri. How knowest the thrydde coniugacion? That at hath an E schorte in the secunde person indicatyf mode presentis temporis, as legeris, or in the infinityf mode, as legere. How knowyste the fourthe coniugacion? That at hath an I longe byfor the -re or -ri in the infinityf mode, as[1] audire uel audiri. How many gendres haste of verbes? Fyue: actyf, passyf, neutre, comyn and deponent. How knowyste a verbe actyf? That at endyth in -o and bytokenyth doyng, and may make of hym a passyf, and be construyd wyth an accusatyf case of a resonable thyng, as 'I loue a man', Diligo hominem. How knowyste a verbe passyf? That at endyth in -r and is i-formed of an actyf and bytokenyth suffryng and may be construyd wyth an ablatyf case of a resenable best, as 'I am loued of a

---

[1]MS A- from a

man', Diligor ab homine. How knowyst a verbe neutre? That at endyth in -o as an actyf and bytokenyth doynge and suffryng and may not be construyd wyth an accusatyf case of a resenable beste, as curro, vapulo. How knowest a verbe commyn? That at endyth in -r as a verbe passyf and may bytokene doyng or suffryng in diuerse reson, as 'I blame the for I am blamed of
340 the', Criminor te quia criminor a te. How many verbes commyn bu ther? V, et cetera.

> Largior, experior, veneror, moror, osculor, ortor,
> Criminor, amplector tibi sunt communia, lector;
> Si bene connumeres, interpretor addere debes.

How knoweste a verbe deponent? That at endyth in -r as a verbe comyn and bytokenyth onlych doyng or onlych suffryng, as loquor and nascor.

How many noumbres haste in the verbe? Tweyne: singuler and plurell. The singuler as lego, the plurell as legimus.
350 How many figures hastow in the verbe? Tweyne: symple as lego, the compoun as negligo.

How many tymes hastow in the verbe? Thre to make Latyn by: the tyme that is now, the tyme that is agoo, the tyme that is to come. For hem in English: 'I loue' for the tyme that is now, 'I haue louyd' for the tyme that is agoo, 'I schall loue' for the tyme that is to com. How many tymes be ther in declynson of the verbe? Fyue, that is the tyme that is nowe, the tyme that is not fullych passed, the tyme that[1] is ⌜fullych⌝ passed, the tyme that ȝore is a-passed, the tyme that is to come.
360 For hem in Englysh:[2] 'I loue' for the tyme that is now, 'I loued' for the tyme that nis not fullych passed, 'I haue loued'

---

[1] ȝore canc. [2] For them in Englysh canc.

for the tyme that is fullych passed, 'I ⌜hadde y⌝-loued' for the tyme that is more than ago, 'I schall loue' for the tyme that is to come.

How many tymes be formed of the furst person of the tyme that is fullych agoo of the indicatyf mode? Thre. Whych thre? The tyme that is more than a-passed in the same mode, the tyme that is parfetly a-passyd in the coniunctyf mode, and the tyme that is to come of the same mode; as amaui, chaungyth
370 the I into an E, thenne hyt schall be amaue, sette ther-to -ram and thenne hyt is amaueram; or sette ther-to a -rim and thenne hyt is amauerim; or sette there-to a -ro and thenne hyt is amauero. How many be formed of the secunde person of the same mode and tyme, singuler noumbre? Other thre. Whych three? The tyme that is ferre a-passyd of the coniunctyf mode, and the tyme that is ferre a-passed of the optatyf mode, and the tyme
(fol.6r) that is ferre a-passed of | the infinityf mode: as amauisti, torne the -ti into a -sem and thenne hyt is amauissem; turne the -ti into a -se and thenne hyt is amauisse. How many
380 persones be ther? III as in pronoun.

How knowyste and aduerbe? A party of reson that is not declinyd and is y-sette wyth the verbe and declareth the significacion of the verbe. How many thyngys falleth to an aduerbe? Thre: significacion, comparison and figure. The significacions of the aduerbe be diuerse for summe be aduerbes of place, and summe of tyme, as the 'Donet' declareth. How many degrees of comparison bu ther in an aduerbe? Thre: posytyf, comparatyf and superlatyf. How knoweste the posytyf degre of an aduerbe? That at bytokenyth qualite or quantite

wythoute eny echyng, as 'wyselych'. How knowyste the comparatyf? That at bytokenyth qualite or quantite wyth sumwhat echyng, as 'wyseloker'. How knowest the superlatyf? That at bytokenyth qualite or quantite wyth aldermost echyng, as 'wyselokest'. How many fygures haste in aduerbes? Tweyne: simple as docte, the compoun as indocte.

How many reules haste to knowe whenne a propre name of a place othyr of toun or cite schal be put in the stede of an aduerbe? Foure. Whych foure? The furst is whenne I haue a propre name of a toun or a place of the furst declynson or the secunde, singuler noumbre, nouȝt i-compounyd, comyng in construccion after a verbe, participle, gerundyf or suppyn bytokenyng dwellyng in place, he schal be putte in the voys of genityf case in stede of an aduerbe wythoute a preposicion, as 'I dwelle atte Oxenford that dwellyd sumtyme at Yorke', Moror Oxonie qui quondam moratus fui Eboraci. Whyche is the secunde reule? Whenne I haue a propre name of a toun or cyte or place of the thrydde declynson and singuler noumbre or furst declynson and plural noumbre nouȝt i-compounyd comyng in construccion after a verbe, participle, gerundyf or suppyn he schall be put in the voys of the ablatyf case wythoute any preposicion, as Sum Cartagine qui quondam fui Londonijs. Whych is the thrydde rule? Whenne I haue a propre name of a toun or of a place nouȝt i-compounyd comyng[1] in construccion after a verbe, participle, gerundyf or suppyn bytokenyng sturyng into a place he schall be putte in voys of an accusatyf case instede of an aduerbe, whatsoeuer declynson or noumbre so he be. Whyche is the fourthe reule? That is whenne I haue

---

[1] bytwene canc.

a propre name of toun or place nouȝt i-compounyd comyng in construccion after a verbe, participle, gerundyf or suppyn bytokenyng sturynge from a place, he schall be putte in the voys of ablatyf case instede of an aduerbe, what noumbre or what declynson euer he be. How many nounes appellatyfs folwyth the same reule of these propre nounnes? Foure. Whyche foure? Domus, rus, humus and milicia. Also the propre names of contreys, tounes or places that be compouned schul folwe the reule of nounes appellatiues, as 'I wynde from Englond to Fraunce', Vade de Anglia ad Franciam; 'I come fro Mounte Pelerz to[1] Bewmount, Veni de Monte Pesulano ad Bellum Montem.

Of what case schal the aduerbe be formed? Other whyle of the nominatyf case and other whyle of the datyf[2] case. Whenne of the nominatif case? Whenne my noune adiectyf endyth in -ens or in -ans, as sapiens, do awey the -s and set thereto -ter, thenne hyt is sapienter. Whenne of the datyf case? Whenne my noune adiectyf is of the secunde declynson or the thrydde nouȝt endyng in -ens ne in -ans. Ensample of the secunde declynson, as docto, chaunge the -o into an -e and thenne hyt is docte; of the thrydde as forti[3], sette thereto a -ter and thenne hyt wol be fortiter, et cetera.

How knowyste a partyciple? A party of reson that is declined and bytokenyth doyng or suffryng[4] wyth case and tyme wythoute mode. How many thyngis falleth to a participle? Sexe: case, gendre, noumbre, figure, tyme, an sygnificacion. Of case hyt is in the participle as hit is in the noun. How

---

[1] a stroke canc.

[2] from genityf

[3] do awey the I and canc.

[4] MS suffryngis

many gendres haste in the participle? Foure. Whyche be they? Masculyn, as lectus, feminine as lecta, neutre as lectum, comyn of thre as hic et hec et hoc legens. Noumbres and figures beth in the participle as in noun.

How many tymes haste in participle? Three: the tyme that is now, the tyme that is agoo, the tyme that is to come. How many endynges haste in the tyme that is nowe? Tweyne: -ens, and -ans. How many of the tyme that is passyd? Other tweyne: -tus, and -sus. How many of the tyme that is to come? Other tweyne: -rus, and -dus. Vnde versus:

-Ens, -ans presentis semper dic temporis esse.
-Tus, -sus preteriti, -rus, -dus dicasque futuri.

How knowyst a partyciple of the tyme that is nowe? Whenne myn Englysh endyth[1] in '-ynge', thenne schal I haue a partyciple of the tyme that is now endyng in -ens or in -ans, as sedens, amans. How knowyste a participle of the tyme that is ago? Whenne I haue thys lettre 'i-' comyng tofore a participle thenne I schall haue a participle of the tyme that is ago endyng in -tus or -sus, as 'i-louid', 'i-sey', amatus, visus. How knowyst whenne thu schalt haue a participle of the future tens? Whenne thys sygne 'to' comyth bytwene the participle and sum, es, fui, thenne I schal haue a partyciple endyng in -rus, as 'I am to rede a lesson', Ego sum lecturus leccionem. Whenne schalte haue the participle endyng in -dus of future tens? Whenne 'to' and 'be' comyth togedre bytwene the participle and sum, es, fui, as 'I am to be louyd of the mayster', Sum amandus a magistro.

---

[1] -th from ng

How many significaciones haste in the participle? Fyue: actyf, passyf, neutre, comyn, and deponent, as hyt declareth in the verbes. How many participles comyth of a verbe actyf? Tweyne, as amans, amaturus. How many of a verbe passyf? Tweyne, as amatus, amandus. Of a verbe neutre? Other tweyn, as stans, staturus. Of a verbe comyn? Foure, as largiens, largiturus, largitus, largiendus. Of a verbe deponent? Thre, as loquens, loqutus, loquturus. Of what party of the 'Donet' schall the participle endyng in -ens or -ans be formed? Of the furst person of the pretert inperfyt tens, indicatyf mode and singuler noumbre, as amabam, -bam conuersa in N et S, fit amans. Wherof schall the participle endyng in -tus or -sus be formed? Of the laste suppyn, as amatu, set therto[1] an -s and thenne hit is amatus. Wherof is the participle endyng in -rus i-formed? Of the laste suppyn, as amatu, sette therto a -rus and thenne hyt is amaturus. Wherof schal the participle endyng in -dus be formed? Of the participle of the tyme that is now of the genitif case, as amantis, do awey the -tis and set therto a -dus, and thenne hyt is amandus.

How knowest a coniunccion? A party of reson that is not declynyd and wole joyne tweyne nomynatyf case in rewarde of a verbe, other ellys twey verbes in reward of a nominatyf case. How many thyngis falleth to a coniunccion? Thre. Whych thre? Power, figure and order. How many spyces hath the power of coniunccion? Fyue, by the 'Donet': copulatyf, disiunctyf, expletyf, racionel, and causell. How knowest a coniunccion copulatyf? That at joynyth | twey nominatyf case singuler in reward of a verbe plurell, as 'I and thu beth in the scole',

[1] a rus canc.

Ego et tu sumus in scola. How knowyst a coniunccion disiunctyf? That at joynyth twey nominatyf case singuler in reward of a verbe singuler, as 'I or my felowe haue spende a peny', Ego uel socius meus expendidit denarium. Her knowe for a generall reule that whenne vel coniunccion comyth bytwene twey nominatyf case the verbe that is folwyng schall acorde wyth the latter nominatyf case and nouȝt wyth the furst, as Ego uel tu curris. How knowest a coniunccion expletyf? That at fulfylleth the sentence of a reson that is folwyng, as 'I forsothe haue souped, thu forsothe not', Ego quidem cenaui tu vero non. How knowest a coniunccion causell? That at bytokenyth cheson of that at is folwyng, as 'Thu hast trespasyd therfor thu schalt be betyn', Tu deliquisti ideo verberaberis. How knowest a coniunccion racionell? That at bytokenyth reson of that at is folwyng othyr of that byfore, as 'For thu art my frende I loue the well', Quia tu es meus amicus diligo te. The ordre of coniunccion stondyth on these maners. Sume schull be set byfore, as at, ac, ast, and summe byhynde, as que, ve, autem, and summe buth comyn, as ergo, ideo, igitur. In coniunccion buth tweyne figures: the simple as nam, the compoun as namque et cetera.

How knowest a preposicion? A party of reson that is not declinyd and seruith to accusatyf case and ablatyf. How many thyngis falleth to a preposicion? On onlych. Wheche on? Case. How many case? Tweyne: accusatyf and ablatyf. Wheche beth the preposicion that seruyth to accusatyf case? As many as be conteynyd in thys demaunde of the 'Donet': 'Da preposiciones casus accusatiui'. Wheche beth hy that seruyth to the ablatyf case? As[1] many as beth conteynyd in 'Da

---

[1] A- from a

preposiciones casus ablatiui, et cetera'. How many seruyth to bothe case? Foure: in, sub, super, subter.

530 How knowyste an interieccion? A party of reson that bytokenyth talente of a mannys thouȝte and is not declinyd, as 'fy', 'hay'. How many thyngys falleth to an interieccion? Onlych significacion. How many spyces hath the sygnificacion of interieccion? Foure: myrthe, as 'to gooderhele', as euax; sorwe, as heu; drede, as haa, id est metum; wandryng, as pape, id est miror, et cetera.

E. London, British Library, MS Add. 12,195, fol.66r

(fol.66r) (H)ow many partys of reson ben þer? VIII. Qwych viij? Nown, pronown, uerbe, aduerbe, partycipyll, coniunccion, preposicion, interiection. How many arn declynyd and how many arn vndeclynyd? IIII arn declynyd and iiij arn vndeclynyd. Qwych iiij arn declynyd? Nown, pronown uerbe and partycipyll. Qwych iiij arn vndeclynyd? Aduerbe, coniunccion, preposycyon and interiection. How many arn declynyd w^{t} case^{l} and how many w^{t}owt case? III w^{t} case and I w^{t}owt case. Qwych iij w^{t} case? Nown, pronown and partycypyll. Qwych on w^{t}owte case? Verbe alone.

How know ȝe a nown? For all þat I may see or fele or know þat beryth þe name of a thyng is a nown, as homo for 'a man', corpus for 'a body', anima for 'a sowle' and all so lyke. How many maner of nownys ben þer? II. Q(wich) ii? A nown substantyf and a nown adiectyf. How ken ȝe a nown substantyf? For it may stond⟨e⟩

(Doesn't continue on other side of leaf or elsewhere in MS.)

---

[1] abbreviated caꝰ, which is normally Latin 'casus'

F. London, British Library, MS Add. 37,075, fols.1^{r}-6^{v}

(fol.1^{r}) H⟨ow man⟩y partis of reson be þer? VII⟨I⟩ Whiche viij? Nown, pronown, verbe, a⟨duer⟩be, participill, coniunccion, preposicion and int⟨er⟩iecc̄ion. How many be declyned and how many be vndeclyned? IIII be declyned and iiij be vndeclyned. Whiche iiij be declyned? Nown, pronown, verbe and participill. Whiche iiij be vndeclyned? Aduerbe, coniunccion, preposicion and interieccion. Howe many be declyned w^{t} case and how many w^{t}owt case? III be declyned w^{t} case and oon w^{t}owt case. Whiche iij be declyned w^{t} case? Nown, pronown and participill. Which oon w^{t}out case? Verbe only.

Howe know þu a nown? For all þat I may see, here, fele or vndirstande þat beryth þe name of a thyng is a nown. How many thyngys longe to a nown? VI. Whiche vj? Qualite, comparison, gendyr, nowmber, figure and case. How many maner of nownys be þer? II. Whiche ij? A nown substantyf and a nown adiectyffe. How know þu a nown substantyffe? For he may stonde by hymmself w^{t}out þe helpe of a nodyr worde and is declyned in Laten w^{t} oon artikyll as hic magister or w^{t} ij at the most as hic et hec sacerdos. How know þu a nouwn (fol.1^{v}) adiectyve? | ⟨For he may not stonde by hymself w^{t}out þe help⟩e of a noþer worde and is ⟨declyned in Laten w^{t} iij a⟩rtikyllis as hic et hec et hoc felix, or w^{t} iij ⟨di⟩uerse endyngis as bonus, -a, -um.

How many degrees of comparison be þer? III. Whiche iij? Þe positive, þe comparatyve and þe superlatyve. How know þu þe posityve degree? For he is grounnde of all odyr degrees of comparison, as 'wyse'. How know þu the comparatyve degree?

For he passith þe posityve degree w^t^ þis aduerbe magis as 'mor wyse' or 'wyser'. How know þu the superlatyve degree? For he passith þe posityve w^t^ þis aduerbe valde or maxime, as 'most wyse' or 'wysest'.

How many gendirs be þer? VII. Whiche vij? Þe masculyn, þe femynyn, þe newter, þe comyn of ij, þe comyn of iij, þe dubyn and þe episcen. How know þu the masculyn gendyr? For he is declyned w^t^ hic as hic magister. How know þu the femynyn gendyr? For he is declyned w^t^ hec as hec musa. How know þu þe newter gendyr? For he is declyned w^t^ hoc as hoc scamnum. How know þu þe comyn of ij? For he is declyned w^t^ hic and hec as hic et hec sacerdos. How know þu þe comyn of iij? For he is declyned w^t^ hic, hec, hoc as hic et hec et hoc felix. How know þu the dubyn gendir? For he is declyned w^t^ hic and hec and a[1] vel comyng betwen as hic | ⟨vel hec dies. (fol.2^r^) How k⟩now þe episcen gendyr? For vndyr ⟨on⟩ voys and ⟨on ar⟩ticull he comprehendeth male and female, as hic passer for 'a sparow'.

How many nowmbyrs ben þer? II. Whiche ij? Synguler and plurell. How know ye the singuler nombyr? For he spekyth of on þynge, as 'a man'. How know ye the plurell? For he spekyth of moo thyng þan of on, as 'men'.

How many case ben þer? VI. Whiche vi? Nominatyff, genetyff, datyff, accusatyff, vocatyff and ablatyff. How know ye þe nominatiff case? For he comyth byfore þe verbe and answeryth to þis question 'who or what?'. How know ye þe genityff case? For 'of' aftyr a nown substantyff, verbe substantyffe, nown partityff, distributyff, comparatyff or

---

[1] vel canc.

superlatyff degree is signe off þe genityff case. How know ye þe datyff case? For 'to' before a nown or a pronown is signe of the datyff case. How know ye the accusatyff case? For he comyth aftyr the verbe. How know ye þe vocatyff case? For he callith or spekyth to. How know ye the ablatyff case? By my signes. Which be thoo? 'In', 'w^{t}', 'throw', 'for', or 'froo', 'þan' and 'by' aftyr a comparatyff degree, be the signes of the ablatyff case.

How many declensons of nowmys ben þer? V. Whiche v? (fol.2^{v}) The fyrst, þe secunde, ⟨th⟩e iij^{d}, the iiij⟨th, the v^{te}. How know ye the fyrst declenson? For the g⟩enityf case singuler ⟨endyth in -e, and also the dat⟩yff case, as nominatiuo hec musa, genitiuo huius -se, datiuo huic muse. How know ye the secunde declenson? For þe genityff case singuler endyth in -i and þe datyff in -o, as nominatiuo hic magister, genitiuo huius magistri, datiuo huic magistro. How know ye the iij^{d} declenson? For þe genityff case singuler endith in -is, the datyff in -i, as hic et hec sacerdos, genitiuo huius -dotis, datiuo huic sacerdoti. How know ye the iiijth declenson? For the genityff case synguler endyth in -vs, the datyff in -vi, as nominatiuo hec manus, genitiuo huius manus, datiuo huic manui. How know ye the v^{te} declenson? For þe genityff case singuler endith in -ei, the datyff also, as nominatiuo hec species, genitiuo huius speciei, datiuo huic speciei.

How know ye a pronown? For he is sett for a propir nown and sumtyme receuyth certeyn person. How many thyngis longe to a pronown? VI. Whiche vj? Qualite, gendyr, numbyr, figure, person and case. How many pronownnys ben þer? XV.

Whiche xv? Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste, hic and is; meus, tuus, suus, noster and vester, nostras and vestras. How many be primatiuis, how many be deriuatiuis? VIII be primatiuis and vij be deryuatiuis. Whiche viij be primatiuis? (fol.3r) Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste | ⟨hic and is.⟩ Which ⟨vii be deriu⟩atiuis? Meus, tuus, suus, noster and vester, nostras and vestras. How many haue the vocatyff case and how many want? IIII haue the vocatyff case and all oþer want. Whiche iiij haue þe vocatyff case? Tu, meus, noster and vestras, and all oþer want.

How many personns ben þer? III. Which iij? The first, the secund, þe iij^{d}. How know ye the first? For he spekyth of hymmselfe, as 'I' or 'we'. How know ye the secund? For he spekyth to a noþer, as 'þu' or 'ye'. How know ye the iij^{d}? For all nownnys and pronownnnys and participillis be þe iij^{d} person, owte take ego, nos, tu and vos w^{t} her obliquis and the vocatyff case.

How many declensons be ther? IIII. Whiche iiij? Þe fyrst, the secund, the iij^{d}, the iiijth. How know ye the fyrst declenson? For þe genityff case singuler endith in -i or in -is, the datyff in -i, as nominatiuo ego, genitiuo mei vel mis, datiuo michi. How many pronownns be of þis declenson? III. Which iij? Ego, tu, sui. How know ye the secund declenson of pronownns? For the genityff case singuler endith in -ius or in -ius, the datyff in -i or in -c, as illius, eius, illi, huic. How many pronownns be of þis declenson? V. Whiche v? Ille, ipse, iste, hic and is. How many nownnnys? VIII. Whiche viij? Vnus, ullus, totus, solus, alter, alius,

(fol.3^{v}) quis and vter | w^{t} her compownys. ⟨How know ye the iij^{d} declenson⟩ of pronownnnys? For þe ⟨genitiff⟩ case singuler ⌜⟨endith⟩⌝ in -i or in -e, the datyff in -o or in -e, as nominatiuo meus, -a, -um, genitiuo mei, mee, -i, datiuo meo, -e, -o. How many pronownnnys be of þis declenson? V. Whiche v? Meus, tuus, suus, noster and vester. How know ye the iiijth declenson of pronowns? For the genityff case singuler endyth in -atis, the datyff in -ati, as hic et hec nostras, genitiuo huius nostratis, datiuo huic nostrati. How many pronownnys be of this declenson? II. Whiche ij? Nostras and vestras.

How know ye a verbe? For he is declyned w^{t} mode and tens w^{t}owt case and articull, and betokenyth 'to do' or 'to suffyr' or 'to be'. How many thyngis long to a uerbe? VII. Whiche vij? Mode, coniugacion, gender, numbyr, fygure, tens and person. How many modys be þer? V. Whiche v? Indicatyff, imperatyff, optatyff, co(n)iunctyff and infenityff. How know ye the indicatyff mode? For he shewith a reson trew or false by the wey of askyng or of tellyng. How know ye the imperatyff mode? For he byddith or commaundith. How know ye the optatyff mode? For he willith or desyrith. How know ye the coniunctyff mode? For he joynyth mode to mode, tens to tens. How know ye the infenityff mode? For 'to' byfore a verbe is (fol.4^{r}) signe of the infenityff | ⟨mode; and when ij uerbys come⟩ togedyr w^{t}owt a relatyff ⟨or a⟩ coniunccion þe latter shall be þe infenytiff mode.

How many coniugacions ben þere? IIII. Whiche iiij? Þe fyrst, the secunde, the iij^{d}, the fourth. How know ye the

first? For he hath A long byfore the -re yn the infenityff mode, as amare. How know ye the secunde? For he hath E long byfore the -re in the infenytiff mode, as docere. How know ye iij^{d}? For he hath E schorte byfore the -re in the infenityff mode, as legere. How know ye the fourth? For he hath I long byfore the -re in the infenityff mode, as audire.

How many gendyrs be þer of verbis? V. Which v? Actyff, passyff, neuter, deponent and commyn. How know ye a verbe actyff? For he endith in -o and may take R upon -o and make of hym a passyff. How know ye a uerbe passyff? For he endith in -r and may do awey þe -r and turn ynto his actyff. How know ye a uerbe neuter? For he endith in -o and may not take R upon -o nor make of hym a passyf. How know ye a uerbe deponent? For he hath the letter of þe passyff and þe significacion of þe actyff, and iij participillis as loquens, locutus, locuturus. How know ye a uerbe comyn? For he endith in -r and hath the significacion of the actyff and
(fol.4^{v}) passiff both, and iij participillis as criminans, | criminatus, criminaturus.

⟨How⟩ many nownbyrs be þer? II. Whiche ij? Singuler and plurell. Whiche is þe singuler? All þat commyth afore 'et pluraliter'. Which is the plurell? All þat commyth aftyr 'et pluraliter'.

How many tens be þer? V. Which v? Þe present, þe preterinperfite, þe preterperfit, þe preterpluperfit and þe future. Howe know ye the present tens? For he spekyth of the tyme þat is now, as amo, 'I loue'. How know ye the preterinperfitens? For he spekyth of þe tyme þat is past w^{t}owt this signe 'haue' or 'had', as amabam, 'I louyd'. How

know ye the preterfit? (per) For he spekyth of the tyme þat is past w^{t} þis signe 'haue' as amaui', 'I haue louyd'. How know ye the preterpluperfitens? For he spekyth of the tyme þat is past w^{t} þis signe 'had', as amaueram, 'I had louyd'. How know ye the future tens? For he spekyth of the tyme þat is to come w^{t} þis signe 'schall', as futuro amabo, 'I shall loue'.

How many persons ben þer? III. Which iij? Þe fyrst, þe secund, þe iij^{d}. Which is the fyrst? The first worde, as amo. Which is þe secunde? The secunde worde, as amas. Whiche is þe iij^{d}? Þe iij^{d} worde, as amat.

How know ye an aduerbe? For he is set nere þe uerbe and declarith his significacion. How manny thyngis long to an (fol.5^{r}) aduerbe? III. Whiche iij? Significacion, comparison and figure. How many degreys of comparisons be þer off ⟨aduerb⟩ys? III. Which iij? Þe posytyff, as docte, þe comparatyff, as doctius, þe superlatyff, as doctissime.

How know ye a participill? For he takyth parte off a nown, parte of uerbe, parte of bothe. What takith he of nown? Gendyr and case. What off a uerbe? Tens and significacion. What of bothe? Nombyr and figure. How many tens be þer of participillis? IIII. Whiche iiij? A participill of þe presentens, a participill of þe pretertens, a participill of the first future, a participill off þe last future. How know ye a participill off þe presentens? For his Englissh endith in '-yng', as 'louyng', and his Laten shall ende in -ens or in -ans, as legens, amans. How know ye a participill of þe pretertens? For þis is his English: 'louyd', 'tauȝth', 'herde'; and his Laten schall ende in -tus or in -sus, as

amatus, visus. How know ye a participill of þe first future? For his English begynnyth w^t 'to' w^towt 'be', as 'to loue', and his Laten schall ende in -rus, as amaturus. How know ye a participill of þe last future? For his Englissh begynnyth w^t 'to' and 'be' after, as 'to be louyd', and his Laten shall ende in -dus, as amandus.

Of whom is a participill of þe presentens i-formyd? Of þe first person synguler of þe preterinperfitens of þe (fol.5^v) indicatyff mode by channgyng -bam into N/ ⟨and S, as amabam, change -bam into N⟩ and S it is amans. Of whom is a participill⟩ of þe pretertens i-formed? Of þe latter suppyne of þe verbe bye puttyng to -s, as lectu, put to -s, it is lectus. Off whom is a participill of þe fyrst future i-formyd? Of þe latter suppyn of þe verbe be puttyng to -rus, as lectu, put to -rus,[1] it is lecturus. Of whom is a participill of the last future formed? Of þe genityff case, singulere nowmbyr of þe participill of þe presentens by chaungyng -tis into -dus, as legentis chaunge -tis into -dus, it is legendus.

How know ye a coniunccion? For he joynyth odyr partis of reson togedyr in ordyr. How many thyngis long to a coniunccion? III. Whiche iij? Poure, figure and[2] ordyr. How many maner of coniunccions ben þer? V. Whiche v? Copulatyff, disiunctyff, expletyff, casuall, racionall. Whiche be copulatyffs? All þat ben in þis verse, 'Da copulatiuas'. Whiche be disiunctiuis? All þat ben in þis verse, 'Da disiunctiuas'. Whiche be expletiuis? Alle þat ben in þis verse, 'Da explatiuas'. Whiche be causallys?

---

[1] -r from D [2] odyr canc.

Alle þat ben in þis verse, 'Da causales'. Whiche ben racionallis? All þat ben in þis verse, 'Da racionales'.

How know ye a preposicion? For he is sett byfore oþer partys of reson in apposicion or in composicion. How many thyngis long to a preposicion? On. Whiche on? Case only.
(fol.6^{r}) To how many case seruyth a preposicion? | ⟨II. Which ii?
231 The accusatyff⟩ or þe ablatyff. Whiche ser⟨ue to the accusat⟩yff case and whiche to the ablatyff case? All þat ben in þis verse, 'Da preposiciones casus accusatiui', serue to þe accusatyff case; all þat ben in þis verse, 'Da preposiciones casus ablatiui', serue to þe ablatyff case; and all þat ben in þis verse. 'Da vtriusque', will serue to both case.

How know ye an interiección? For he betokenyth passion of a mannys soule vndyr an vnperfite voycc, as of joy, woo,
240 wondyr, drede or indignacion.

How many concordis of grammer ben þer? V. Which[1] v? The first bytwene þe nominatyff case and the verbe, the secunde bytwene the adiectyff and the substantyff, the iij^{d} bytwene þe relatyff and þe antecedent, the iiijth bytwen þe nowm partityff or distributyff and þe genityff case þat folowith, the v^{te} bytwene the superlatyff degree and þe genityff case þat folwyth. In how many shall þe nominatyff case and þe uerbe acorde? In ii. Whiche ij? In nombyr and person. In how many shall þe adiectyff and þe substantyff
250 accorde? In iij. Whiche iij? In case, gendyr and nombyr. In how many shall þe relatyff and þe antecedent accorde? In iij.

---

[1] v(?) canc.

Which iij? In gendyr, nommbyr and person. In how many shall the nown partityff or distributyff accorde w^{t} þe
(fol.6^{v}) genityff|case þat folowyth? ⟨In on. Whiche on? In⟩ gendyr only. In how many shall þe superlatyff degre accorde w^{t} þe genityff þat folowyth? In on. Whiche on? In gendir only. Explicit.

G. London, Public Record Office, MS C.47/34/13, fols.22^{r}-23^{r}

(The MS is badly damaged at this point by water. The following text is based on a transcript made under ultra-violet light.)

(fol.22^{r}) 'Hwo' to-for de verbe ys nominatyf case; 'hwat' eft(er) de verbe ys acusatyf cas⟨e; 'hwat'⟩ efter dys verbe sum, e(s), fui ys nominatyft case; 'of' genetyf; 'to' datyf case; on (of)[1] þi ⟨signes⟩ 'yn', 'by', 'wyt', 'dorwe' and 'fro' schal cerue to ablatyf case. 'Of' efter a nown substantyf, partatyf, superlatyf degre, 'of' efter a dicion sy⟨nfyyt fulnesse⟩ or foydnesse schal cerue to genityf case. 'Of' efter þis verbe of sum, es, fui schal ⟨cerue to⟩ genetyf case. 'Of' efter a verbe, 'of' efter a particypille, 'of' efter a gerundyf, 'of' efter ⟨a supyn⟩ schal cerue to ablatyf case wyt a preposiscion. 'Þane' efter a comparatyf degre[2] s⟨chal cerue⟩ to ablatyf case.

How manye tens beyt þer? Fy(v)e. Wyche fy(v)e? Presentens, pretert inperfectens, preterperfectens, perfectens, futur tens. How[3] knowyst þu de presentens? For hyt synf⟨yyt de tyme⟩ þat ys nuw. How knowyst þu de preteryt imper(fe)ctens? For hyt synfyyt ⟨de tyme nat fully agon⟩. How k⟨no⟩wys þu de preteryt perfecte(n)s? For hyt synfyyt de tyme þat ys ⟨fully agon⟩ alþer varnyst ago. How k(n)owyst þu de preteryt plusquamperfectens? For hyt synfyyt ⟨de⟩ tyme þat ys (more þan agon. How knowyst þu de futur tens? For hyt synfyyt de tyme þat ys) to comyne.

---

[1] on (of)] MS o· [2] MS þegre [3] many canc.

How ma(n)y modis beyt þer? Fyue. Wyche fyve?[1] Indicatyf mod, inperatyf mod⟨e⟩, optatyf mode, coniun͡c͡tyf mod, infyntyf mod. How k(n)owyst þu indicatyf mod⟨e⟩? For he schewyt oþer actyt. How knowyst þu de[2] ⌜inperatyf⌝ mod? For hyt hotyt ⟨..⟩. How k(n)owyst þu optatyf mod? For hyt wyllyt oþer desyryt. How k(n)owyst þu coniunctyf mod? For hyt ys y-runyd be c,[3] oþer by cum oþer by eny oþer coniunccion þat schal cerue to coniunctyf mod. How knowyst
30 þu infynytyf mod? For w⟨hen⟩ þer comyt two verbys yn a reyson de latter schal be infynytyf mod.|

(fol.22^{V}) ⟨How⟩ manye concordanys byt þer? Dre. On betwene þe nominatyf case and de werbe, ⟨a⟩ nodyr betwene de aiectyf and de substantyf, and a noþer be þe relatyf and de anteced⟨ent⟩. In how manye hauyt de nominatyf case and de verbe acorde? In two. In weche two? Yn numbyr and persam. Yn how manye hauyt de aiectyf and de substantyf acorde? Ym dre. In weche dre? In numbyr and[4] gendyr and case. Yn how manye hauyt de relatyf[5] and de ancedent to acorde? In dre. In
40 wyche dre? In gendyr, numbyr ⟨and⟩ persowne.

Ech patisipul þat endit yn '-yngge' as 'louyngg' ys presentens of ⟨..⟩ participyl þat schal ende yn Latyn yn -ens vel -ans as legens, ⟨a⟩mans. Ech particpyl synfyn 'y-do' ys pretertens[6] þat ende in Latyn ⟨in⟩ -tus vel in -sus, vt lectus, visus. Ech participyl synfyn 'to[7] ⌜be do⌝' ⟨ys fu⟩ture tens of participyl and þat schal yn Latyn yn -rus, as lecturus, ⌜visurus⌝. ⟨Ech⟩ participyl[8] synfyn '⌜for⌝ to be do' ys future

---

[1] -u- from e [2] infynytyf canc. [3] sic MS [4] persun canc.
[5] MS leralatyf [6] i canc. [7] ys canc. [8] þat endit canc.

tens of participyl and þat schal ende in Latyn in in -dus, vt ⌜legendus⌝, amandus.

50 Ech ayectyf[1] þat hendyt in '-yngge' as 'louyngge', 'redyng' ys presentens p⟨articip⟩ul and þat schal ⌜ende⌝ yn Latin yn -ens oþer -ans, vt legens, amans. ⟨. . .⟩ |

(fol.23r) Hywyche ys þe knowlychyng of de forste clensun? ⟨.....⟩ Wyche? Þe veche þe gentif casce singuler endyt yn ⟨-e, þe datif⟩ also, þe acusatif yn -am, þe vocatyf schel be leche de ⟨nominatyf, þe⟩ ablatyf in -a. ⟨.....⟩

---

[1] heche adiectyf added above the line

H. Norwich, Norfolk Record Office, Colman MS 111, (fol.1^{v} of medieval MS A)

...the plurale numbre in Latyn allso. A word yn Englysch ys synglar nombre whan he spekyth but of one thyng, as 'a{man' chyld', 'a{beest' boke'. A word in Englysch ys plurall numbre whan he spekyth of many thyngys, as{'men' 'childurn'},{'beestis' 'bookys'. Numbre in a substantyue ys knowm by hys Englysch.

Ther be v gendres, the:

The { masculyn, femynyn, neutur, comyn of ij, comyn of thre } gendre.

All wordys declyned only w^{t} thys artykyll hic be masculyn gendur, as nominatiuo hic{magister dignus. Hic ys artykyll of the masculyn gendre. Allso all wordys þat be declyned w^{t} hec be femynyn gendre, as nominatiuo hec toga. Hec ys artykyll of the femynyn gendre. All wordys declyned w^{t} hoc be neutur gendur, as nominatiuo hoc{scamnum corpus. Hoc ys artykyll of the neutur gendre. Hec in the plurall numbre ys the neutur gendre. All wordys declyned w^{t} hic and hec be the comyn gendre of ij, as hic, hec{sacerdos aduena. All wordys of the forsayd gendres be nownys substantyues.

How knowe ye a nowne substantyue? By hys Englysch and by hys Laten. In Englych he may stand w^{t}owt an adiectyffe and comynly one of thes[1] tokens go before hym as:

'a{man' chyld' boke' 'an{halle' halter' hors' 'the{sone' mone' see'

---

[1] -e- from y

In Latyn he ys declyned w^{t} one artykyll,[1] as nominatiuo hic {magister / dominus, hec {musa / vestis, hoc {scamnum / corpus ; w^{t} ij artykyllis, as nominatiuo hic, hec sacerdos. All wordys declyned w^{t} iij artykyllys be the comyn gendre of iij, as nominatiuo hic, hec, hoc {vetus / felix ; nominatiuo hic, hec {doccior / vtilis et hoc {doctius / vtilius[2] ; hic, hec omnis et hoc omne; hic, hec melior et hoc -lius; and all such be adiectyuys of the third declynacion.

How knowne ye a nowne adiectyue? By hys Englych and by hys Latyn. . . .

---

[1] or w^{t} canc. [2] -ius from e

J. Oxford, Bodleian Library, MS Digby 26, fols.63^{r}, 63^{v}, 5^{v}, 62^{v}

(fol.63^{r}) Qweche[1] is þe knoulaching of þe first declinesone? Þis is hit of quom þe genitif and þe datif cas singuler, þe nominatif and þe vocatif cas pluril enden in -e, þe accusatif in -am, þe vocatif shal be lyk to þe nominatif, þe ablatif in -a, þe genitif pluril in -arum, þe datif and þe ablatif in -is, þe accusatif in -as.

(fol.63^{v}) Qwech is þe knoulaching of þe secunde declinisonne? Þis is hit of quom þe genitif cas singuler, þe nominatif and þe vocatif cas plurel enden en -i, ⌜þe datif and þe ablatif enden in -o,⌝ þe accusatif cas singler in -vm. Quen þe nominatif cas singler endes in -r þe vocatif shal be lik to hit. Quen hit endes in -vs þe vocatif shal enden in -e. Quen hit endes in -ivs þe vocatif shal enden in -i and hit be a propre noune. Þe genitif plurel in -orum, þe datif and þe ablatif in -is, þe accusatif in -os.

(fol.5^{v}) Quech is þe knoulaching of þe thrid declineson? This is hit of quome þe genetif cas singlre endes in -is, þe datif in -i, þe accusatif in -em or in im, þe vocatif shal be lik to þe nominatif, þe ablatif in -e or in -i; þe nominatif and þe accusatif and þe vocatif casus plurel enden in -es, þe genitif cas plurel in -vm or in -ium, þe datif and þe ablatif in -bus. ⌜Versus. Qweche is the knoulac⌝

(fol.62^{v}) Qweche is þe. Qweche is the know.

---

[1]MS adds Qweche is on the preceding line.

K. Oxford, Bodleian Library, MS Douce 103, fols.53^{r}-57a^{r}

(fol.53^{r}) How mony partyse of speche ben þer? VIII. Wyche viij? Nowne, pronowne, verbe, aduerbe, partycypull, coniunccion, preposicion and interiección. How mony byth declynd and how mony byn vndeclynd? IIII byn declynd and iiij byn vndeclynd. Weche iiij byn declynd and wyche iiij byn vndeclynd? Nowne, pronowne, verbe and partycypull byn declynd, aduerbe, coniunccion, preposicion and interiección byn vndeclynd. How mony byn declynd w^{t} case and how mony w^{t}owte case? III byn declynd w^{t} case and j w^{t}owte case. Wychy iij w^{t} case, wychy j w^{t}owte case? Nowne, pronowne and partycypull w^{t} case, verbe o(n)ylie w^{t}owte case.

How knowyst[1] a nowne? A nowne ys all maner of thyng þat y may see, fele or hondyll or beryth þe name of a thyng, þe name þerof ys a now(n)e. How mony maner of nownys byn there? II. Wyche ij? Nowne substantyfe and nowne adiectyfe. How knowyst a nowne substantyfe? For he ys declynd w^{t} j artycull or ij at þe most. How knowyst a nowne adiectyfe? For he ys declynd w^{t} iij artyculs or w^{t} iij dyuerse yendyngys. Wyche[2] byn þe artyculys? Hic, hec and hoc. Wyche byn þe iij dyuerse yndyngys? -Vs, -a and -vm. How? As bonus, bona, bonum for 'goode'.

How mony nomburs[3] byn there? II. Wyche to? The synguler nombur and the plurell nowbur. How knowyst the syngler (fol.53^{v}) nowmbur? For he spekyth of on thyng, as 'mon' or 'beste'. How knowyst the plurell nombur? For he spekyth of mony theyngis, as ('men') or 'bestis'.

---

[1] a partycipull canc. [2] h canc. [3] h canc.

How mony degreys of comparsons byn there? III. Wyche iij? The posityff degre, the comparatyf degree and the superatyf degree. How knowyst thow the posytyf degree? For he ys begynner and growndere of all oþer degreys of comparsonys and þey byn formyd of hym and he ys not of them. How knowyst the comparatyf degre? For he endyth yn '-r', as 'fayryre', 'lyngyr', 'schortyre'. How knowyst the superatyf degre? For he endyth[1] yn '-ys' as 'feyryste', 'lengyst', 'schortys'.

How mony persons byn there? III. Wyche iij? 'I' and 'we' the fyrst person, 'þu' and 'ȝe' the secund person. All oþer byn þe iij person excepte the vocatyf case. How knowyst the fyrste person? For he spekyth of hymsylfe, as 'y' or 'we'. How knowyst the ij person? For he spekyth to oþer as 'þu' or 'ȝe'. How knowyst the iij person? For he spekyth of a oþer as 'he' or 'they'.

How mony gendrys byn there? VII. Wyche vij? Masculyn gender, femynin gender, neuter gendur, and commyn of two, commyn (of) iij, dubyn gendur and ypsen gendur. How knowyst masculyn gendur? For he ys declyned w^{t} hic as hic magister. The femynin w^{t} hec as hec musa. The neuter w^{t} hoc as hoc scannum.[2] The commyn of two w^{t} hic and hec as hic et hec sacerdos. The commen of iij w^{t} hic, hec et hoc (as hic, hec et hoc) felyx. (How knowyst) the dubyn gendur? For he ys declynyd w^{t} hic, (fol.54^{r}) hec and vel conjuncion betwene, as hic vel hec dies. | How knowyst the epcyn gendur? For vndur oon artycul he comprehendyth bothe male and female, as hic pascer, hec aquila.

How mony nowmburs byn there? II. Wyche ij? Synguler and plurell. How knowyst þe synguler nowmbur? For he spekyth

---

[1] ys canc. [2] sic MS

but of on thyng, as 'a mon' or 'beste'. How knowyst þe plurel[1] nowmber? For he spekyth of mo thyngis then of on, as 'men' or 'bestis'.

How mony cases byn the(r)? VI. Wyche vj? Nominatyfe case, genetyfe case, the datyfe case, accusatyfe case, the vocatyfe case and the ablatyfe case. How knowyst the nominatyfe case? For he cumyt afore the verbe and askyt thys questyon 'Who or what?' How knowyst the genytyfe case? For 'of' after a nowne substantyfe, verbe substantyfe, nowne partyfe, nowne dystrybutyfe or a superlatyfe degre byn the synes of the genytyfe case. How knowyst the datyfe case? For 'to' before a nowne or a pronowne wyttoty remewyng ys the senys of the datyfe case. How knowyst the accusatyfe case? For he cumyth aftur the verbe and onseryth to thys questyon 'Whom or what?'. How knowyst the wocatyfe case? For he clepyth or callyth or spekyth to. How knowyst the ablatyfe case? By my synes. Wyche byn they? 'Yn' and 'wyth', 'throȝe', 'fro' and 'by' and ('than') after a comparatyf ⌜de⌝gre ys the synes of the ablatyfe case.

(fol.54[v]) How mony declynsuns of nowys? V. Wyche v? The furst, the ij, the iij, the iiij, the v. How knowyst the furst? For the genityfe case synguler endyth yn -e and datyfe also. How knowyst the ij? For[2] þe genityfe synguler endyth yn -i and datyfe and the ablatyfe yn -o. How knowyst the iij? For the genityfe ⌜case⌝ synguler endyth yn -ys, the datyfe yn -i. How knowyst the iijj? For the genityfe case synguler endyth in -vs, the datyfe yn -vj. How knowyst the v? For the genityfe case synguler endyth yn -ei and the datyfe also.[3]

---

[1] MS pluler [2] -o- from e [3] MS adds How knowyst

How mony persuns byn there? III. Wyche iij? The furst, the ij, the iij. How knowyst the i persone? For he spekyth of hymselfe as 'I' o(r) 'we'. How knowyst the ij persone? For he spekyth of a nodur as 'thou' or 'ȝe'. How knowyst the iij persone? For he spekyth of a nodure as 'he' or 'they'.

How knowyst a pronowne? For he ys a parte of speche declynyd w^{t} case þe wyche ys seyt for a propur name of a man and resewyth to hym certey(n) personys. How mony pronowys byn there? XV. Wyche xv? Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, (iste), hic and his, meus, tuus, suus, noster and vester, nostras and vestras. How mony byn the primityfis and how mony byn the (fol.55^{r}) deruatwes? VIII byn þe primitywes and vij / byn deruatywes? Wyche viij byn primitywes? Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste, hic and js. Wych vij byn deruatywes? Meus, tuus, suus, noster and vester, nostras and vestras.

How mony declynsonis of pronownes byn there? IIII. Wych iiij? The j, the ij, the iij, and the iiij. How knowyst the i? For the genytyf case synguler endyth yn -i or yn -ys, the datyfe yn -i. How mony pronownes conteynyth he?[1] III. Wych iij? Ego, tu, sui. How knowyst the ij? For the genytyfe case synguler endyth yn -i(u)s or yn -ius, the datyfe yn -i or yn -o. How knowyst the iij? For the genytyfy[2] case synguler endyth yn -i or yn -e and yn -i and the datyfe yn -o or in -e or in -o. How mony prcnownes conteynyth he? V. Wych v? Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester. How knowyst iiij? For the genytyfy case synguler endyth in -atis and datyfe in -ati. How many pronownes conteyneth he?

---

[1] MS the

[2] -t- from f

II. Wych ij? Nostras and vestras. And how mony nownes? On. Wych on? Cugeas, -ati(s).

How knowyst a verbe? For he ys a party of speche declyned[1] w^t mode, tyme and coniugacion, w^t owte case or artyle, betokynyng 'to do', or sufferyng (or) 'to be'. How mony maner of verbis byn there? V. Wych v? Verbe actyfy, verbe passyfy, verbe neuter, verbe deponent and verbe commyn. |

(fol.55^v) How knowyst a verbe actyfy? For he endyth in -o and betokenyth[2] 'to do', and may take -r apon[3] O and make of hym a passyf, as amo, amor. How knowyst a verbe passyf? For he endyth yn -r and betokenyth 'to suffure' and may do away ys -r fro ys O and turne ayene[4] into ys actyfy, as amor, amo. How knowyst a verbe neuter? For he endyth in -o and may not take -r appon O ne constur w^t hys accusatyf case hominem aftur hym. How knowyst a verbe deponent? For he endyth in -r as a verbe passyf and hath the Englyssche of the actyfy. How knowyst a verbe comyn? For he endyth in -r as a verbe passyf and hath the Englyssche of þe actyf and of the passyf booth.

How[5] mony coniugacions byn there? IIII. Wych iiij? The i as amo, ⌜-as⌝, amor, ⌜-aris⌝; the ij as doceo, doces, doceor, -ris; the iij as lego, -gis, legor, -ris; the iiij as audio, -dis, audior, -ris. How knowyst the i? For he hath A long before the -re infenityf mode, afore the -ris indicatyf mode, as amare vel amaris. How knowyst the ij? For he hath a E long before the -re infenityf mode, before the -ris indicatyf mode, as docere vel -ris. How knowyst the iij? For he hath a E schorte before the -re infenityf[6] mode, before

---

[1]MS edeclyd [2]to do canc. after be- [3]-p- from O
[4]I canc. after a- [5]knowyst canc. [6]MS Indicatyf

the -ris indicatyf mode, as legere vel -ris. How knowyst
(101.56r) the iiij? For he hath a I long | before ⌜the⌝ -re infynityf
mode, before the -ris indecatyf mode, as audire vel -ris.

How mony modis byn there? V. Wyche[1] v? Indicatyf mode, imperatyf modo, optatyf modo, coniunctyf modo, and infenityf modo. How knowyst indicatyf modo? For he tellyt or sowyt and hath no syne of no nothyre mode. How knowyst imperatyf modo? For he byddyth or commawndyth. How knowyst the optatyf modo? For he well or desyryt, and by ys ij synys 'wolde' or 'sculde'. How knowyst the coniunctyf modo? By my synys. Wych byn they? Si, cum, licet, quamvis, quamqua(m) and othyre coniunctions moo wyll haue coniunctyf modo aftur hym. How knowyst infenityf modo? For whan ij verbys commyth togedur w^t^out a relatyf or a coniunccion betwene, the later verbe schall be the infenityf modo.

How mony tymes byn there? V. Wych v? The tyme þat ys noo, the tyme that ys nott fulliche agonne, and the tyme that ys agon, the tyme that (is) more then agoon, and the tyme that ys to cum. How knowyst the tyme that ys no? For he betokynth the tyme þat ys no, as amo, 'y loue'. How knowyst the tyme þat ys not folych agon? For he betokynyt the tyme þat ys not fullych agon, as am(a)bam, 'y louyd'. How knowyst the tyme þat ys agon? For he betokynyd the tyme þat ys agon, as amaui, 'y haue louyd'. How knowyst the tyme þat ys to cum? For he betokynyd the tyme þat ys to[2] cum, as amabo, 'I schal loue'. |

---

[1] -c- from h

[2] ci canc.

(fol.56^{v}) How knowyst an aduerbe? For he ys a party of spech vnndeclynyd, the wych ys caste to a uerbe and makyth playne and fulfyllyth the syngnyfycacion of the verbe.

How knowyst a partycypull? For he ys a party of spech declynyd[1] w^{t} case and takyth parte of a nowne, party of a verbe, and party of both two. What takyth of a nowne? Gendur and case. What of a verbe? Tyme and syngnificacion. What of both to? Nombur and fugur.

How mony maner partycypull byn there? IIII. Wych iiij? The partycypull of the tyme þat ys now, the partycypull of tyme þat ys[2] agon, the partycypull ⌜of the⌝ tyme þat ys to cum actyf, the partycypull of the tyme þat ys to cum passyf. How knowyst the partycypull of the tyme þat ys noo? For he endyth in '-yng' yn Englyssch, as 'louyng', 'techyng', 'redyng', 'heryng', and endyth yn -ens or yn -ans yn Latyn. Whereof schall he be formyd? Of the furst person synguler nowbur of the tyme þat ys nott fullych agon, as amabam, change -bam to N and[3] S and make nominatiuo hic, hec, hoc amans. How knowyst the partycypull ⌜of[4]⌝ tyme þat ys gon? For he begynnyth be 'i' yn Englysse as 'y-louyd', 'y-tauȝth', 'y-radde', 'y-herde', and endyth yn -tus or ⌜yn -sus⌝ yn[5] Laten, as amatus, doctus, lectus, auditus. Whereof schall he be formyd? Of the later suppyne, as lectu, sett ther-to -s and make lectus, -a, -um. How knowyst the partycypull of the tyme þat ys to cum actyf? For he[6] begynnyth as 'to'[7] yn Englysse, as 'to loue', 'to

(fol.57a^{r}) teche' et cetera, and endyth yn Laten yn -rus, as amaturus,

---

[1]MS edclynyd [2]to cum canc. [3]MS or [4]MS adds tyme
[5]lar canc. [6]be canc. [7]MS adds be

191 docturus. Whereof schall he be formyd? Of the latur suppyn, as lectu, set there-to -rus and make lecturus. How knowyst the partycypull (of the tyme) bat ys to cum passyfe? For he begynnyth[1] 'to be' yn Englysse, as 'to be louyd', 'to be taȝth', 'to be rad', 'to be harde', and schall endyth yn -dus in Laten, as amandus, docendus, legendus, audiendus. Whereof schall he be formyd? Of the genityf case synguler of the partycypull of the (tyme) that ys nou, as legentis, change the -tis into -dus and make legendus, -da, -dum.

200 How knowyst a coniunction? For he ys a party of speche vndeclynyd, the wych cowpullyth or dyscowpulyth all othere partes of[2] speche yn ordur.

How knowyst a preposicion? For he ys a party of speche vndeclynyd the wych ys set before or be-endyth yn apocycyon or yn compocycyon, and odur wyle seruyth to accusatyf case and odur wyle to ablatyf case and odur wyle to both too.

How knowyst an interieccyon? For[3] he ys a party of speke vndeclynyd the wych shew[t] a monnys wyll w[t] a vnperfytt voyce, as wondur, drede or merwell.

---

[1] w[t] canc. [2] se canc. [3] y canc.

L. Oxford, Bodleian Library, MS Rawl. D.328, fols 119^{r}-126^{r}

(The following text was begun and abandoned on six successive folios, and the end of the text was also partially repeated.)

fol.119^{r}) [How many partes of spech be ther? VIII. Which viij? Nowne, pronowne, verbe, adverbe, participill, coniunccion, preposicion and interiection. How many beth declyned w^{t} c]

fol.120^{r}) [How many partes of spech be ther? VIII. Which viij? Nowne, pronowne, verbe, adverbe, participill, co⟨niun⟩ccion, preposicion and inteieccion. How many]

fol.121^{r}) [How many partes of spech be ther? VIII. Which viij? Nown, prownene, verbe, adverbe, participill, coniunccion, preposicion and interieccion. How many beth declend w^{t} ces]

fol.122^{r}) [How many partes of spech be ther? VIII. Which viij? " Nowne, pronowne, verbe, adverbe, coniunccion, preposicion and interiecco]

fol.123^{r}) [How many partes of spech be ther? VIII. Which viij? Nowne, pronowne, verbe, adverbe, participill, coniunccion, preposicion and interieccion. How many beth declened w^{t} case and how many w^{t}

Ow many]

(fol.124^{r}) How many partes of spech be ther? VIII. Which viij? Nowne, pronowne, verbe, adverbe, participill, coniunccion, preposicion and interieccion. How many beth declyned and how many beth vndeclyned? IIII beth declyned and iiij beth vndeclyned. Which iiij beth declyned? Nowne, pronowne, verbe and participill. Which iiij beth vndeclyned? Adverbe, coniunccion, preposicion and interieccion. How many beth declyned w^{t} case and how many w^{t}out case? III beth declyned w^{t} case and on w^{t}out case. Which iij w^{t} case? Nowne, pronowne and participill. Which on w^{t}out case? Verbe only.

How knowist thow a nowne? For all thyng that I may se or fele or vndirstond that bereth the name of a thyng the name therof ys a nowne. How many maner of nownys be ther? II. Which ij? A nowne substantif and a nowne adiect(i)f. How knowist thow a nowne substantif? For he may stonde by hymself w^{t}out the help of a nother worde and is declyned yn Latyn w^{t} on articule as hic magister, whith ij att the most as hic et hec sacerdos. How knowist a nown adiectif? For he may not stond by hymsilf w^{t}out the help of a nother worde and is declyned yn Latyn w^{t} iij articulis in on case as hic (fol.124^{v}) et hec et hoc felix | or hels whith iij diuers endyngys in oon case as nominatiuo bonus, -a, -um.

How many thyngys belongeth to a nowne? VI. Which vj? Qualite, comparacion, gender, number, figure and (case). How many degreys of comparison be ther? III. Which iij? The positif degre, the comparatif degre and the superlatif degre. How knowist thow the positif degre? For he ys funder and grownder[1] of all other degreys of comparison w^{t}out

---

[1]and grownder] repeated

makyng more or lasse, as 'fayre', 'white', 'blacke'.
How knowist thow the positif degre|...

(The text breaks off here and resumes on fol.125^{r} in the discussion of the declensions of pronowns.)

(fol.125^{r}) of thys declynson? III. Which iij? Ego, tu, sui.
How[1] knowist thow the secunde declynson of pronownys? For
the genitif case singuler endeth in -ius or in -ius, the[2]
so datif in -i or in -e. How many be ther of that declynson? V.
Which v? Ille, ipse, iste, hic and hijs. How knowist thow
the iii^{de} declenson of pronownys? For the genitif case
singuler endeth in -i, in -e, and in -i, the datif in -o, in
-e, and in -o. How many pronownys be ther of that declenson? V.
Which v? Meus, tuus, suus, noster and vester.|

(fol.126^{r}) of this declenson? III. Which iij? Ego, tu, sui. How
many be ther of this declenson?

---

[1] w- canc. [2] repeated

M. Worcester Cathedral, MS F.123, fol.99^{v}

fol.99^{v} (col.a) Incipit hic Liber Accidencium secundum vsum magistri Iohannis Leylond

(H)ow mony maners of speche byn ther? VIII. Whiche viij? Nowne, pronowne, verbe, aduerbe, participul, coniunccion, preposicion and interiection. How mony of these byn declyned and how mony byn vndeclyned? IIII byn declyned and iiij byn vndeclined. Whiche iiij byn declyned? Nowne, pronowne, verbe and participull. Whiche iiij byn vndeclyned? Aduerbe, coniunction, preposicion and interiection. How mony byn declyned w^{t} case and how mony w^{t}oute case? III w^{t} case, and i w^{t}oute case. Whiche iij w^{t} case? Nowne, pronowne and participul. Whiche i w^{t}oute case? Verbe only.

How knowest a no<wn>e? Of euery thing that is in this world or out of this world the name is a nowne, as 'man', 'angel', 'vertue', etcetera. Whad maner of speche 'a man'? A nowne. Whiso? For hit berith the name of a thing that is in this world. 'Hevyn': whad maner of speche? A nowne. Whi so? For hit beryth the name of a thing that is out of this world.

How mony maner nownys byn ther? II. Whiche ij? A nowne substantyf and an nowne adiectyf. How knoest þu a nowne substantyf? For he may stand by himself w^{t}oute helpe of another wurd, and is declyned in Latyne[1] w^{t} one artycul or ij at the moost in one case, as nominatiuo hic magister, for

---

[1] and is declyned in Latyne] repeated

'a mastyr', nominatiuo hic, hec sacerdos, for 'a pryst'. How knowest þu a nowne adiectyf? For he may not stande by | hymself w^t^oute help of another word and is declyned w^t^ iij articlys, or w^t^ iij diuerse endyngis in one case: w^t^ iij articlys as nominatiuo hic, hec, hoc, felix; w^t^ iij diuerse endingis as nominatiuo bonus, -a, -um. And also euery nowne that may receyve comparson is a nowne adiectif, as senex, senior; iuuenis, iunior.

(fol.99^v^ col.b)

How mony articlys byn ther? Thre. Whiche iij? Hic, hec and hoc.

How mony thingis longyn to a nowne? VI. Whiche vj? Qualite, comparson, gendur, nowmbur, figure and case.

Qualiter declinatur accidunt? Accido, -is, -di, accidere, accidendi, -do, -dum, -accidens; et componitur de ad and cado, -is, et omnia composita huius verbi cado, -dis carent supinis, preter occido, -is quod facit occasum, -su, et resido, -is, quod facit recasum, -su. Vnde versus:

> A cado composita renuerunt cuncta supinis;
> Occidit occasum, recido dat iure re⟨c⟩asum.

De qualitate nominis

Whad is a qualite accidental in a nowne? A propurte kyndely according to on al only, and so hit is a propur qualite as Petrus, or to mony, and so hit comyn as homo.

(A text of the Comparacio is inserted at this point, and this is given as text S below.)

N. Aberystwyth, N.L.W., MS Peniarth 356B, fol.9^{v}

(fol.9^{v}) (Q)what is a comparison? A lyknes of diueris thyngus in a certen accedens. What maner of nownes may receyue þat lykenes? Nownes adiectiues betokenyng qualite or quantite that may be made more or lasse wyt a good sentens, as 'wyse', 'whyte', 'longe', 'chorte'. Qwhat is a qualite in a comparison? A thyng þat comes to þe body and passes away froo þe body and þe body nothur more ne lasse, as 'wys', fayre', 'conyng'.[1] Qwhat is a quantite[2] in a comparison? A thyng þat betokens lytulnes or meculnes, as 'chorte', 'long', 'lytull', 'mykule'. How mony degres of comparyson ben ther? III. Wheche iij? The posityue, þe comparat(i)ue and þe superlatyfe, How knowes þu the posityfe degre? For hyt betoknes qualite or quantete wyt makyng more or lasse, and setys gronde of all oder degres of comparisons, and is formet of none oder, as 'wyse', 'wyte', 'long', 'chorte'.

---

[1] y canc. after -y-

[2] MS qualite

O. Aberystwyth, N.L.W., MS Peniarth 356B, fols.163^{r}-164^{v}

(The following text is inserted in a version of the Accedence, given as text B above, where it replaces the section on comparison. It probably ended on the folio lost after fol.164^{v}.)

What is a comparison? A comparison ys a likenes of dyuers þynges in a certayn accidens. What nounys may receyue þat comparison? Nownys adiectyfes betokenyng qualite or quantite þat may be made more or lesse by good sentence. Vnde versus:

Est adiectiuis[1] graduum collacio talis,
Dum valet augeri sua proprietas minuive.

What is a qualite in comparioson? A þynge þat comethe to þe body and passethe awey fro þe body and þe body neuer þe more ne þe les, as 'wys', 'feyr', 'connyng'. What ys a quantite in
10 camparison? A þyng þat betokenethe litelnesse or mechelnesse and may not be take aweye w^{t} ovte makyng more or lesse, as 'long', 'shorte', 'brode'.

How many greys of comparison byn þer? III. Whiche iij? Þe posityf, comparatyf and þe superlatyf. How knowe ȝe þe
(fol.163^{v}) posityf degre? Fo⟨r⟩ he betokenethe qualite or | quantite and ys þe ground of all oder degreis of comparison, as 'wys', 'white', 'long', 'shorte'. Whereof ys þe posityf formed? The posityf degre is not formed but of hym byn formed all oder degreis of comparison. W^{t} what case will þe posityf degree be construed
20 after hym? W^{t} no case[2] by þe strengthe of hys degre.

How know ȝe þe comparatyf degre? For he passethe his posityf wyt þis aduerbe magis, and endithe in Englisse in '-ir', as 'whitur', 'blacker', þat is to sey 'whitter: more white', 'blacker: mor blacke'. Whereof ys þe comparatyf y-formed?

---

[1] MS adiectius [2] an illegible word canc.

Of hys posityf. Of what case? Oder while of þe genetif case and oder while of þe datyf case. Vnde versus:[1]

Si tibi declinet positiuum norma secunde,
Taliter inde gradum debes formare secundum:
I breuies, quem dat geniti(u)us, et or superaddas.
Terne consimule formabunt more datiui.
Inde sinisterior, hinc et iunior excipiuntur.
Iungis amicus, beneficus, sic magnificusque,
Mirificus sed honerificus coniungitur istis,
Et sic munificus, sit 'Catholicon' tibi testis,
Et potis et nequam que dant aliam tibi formam.

When is he formed of þe genetyf case? When þe noun of þe posityf degre is þe fyrst declynson and þe secund, þen þe comparatyf degre shall be formed of þe genytyf case singler in -i puttyng þer to þis sillable -or as albi, -ior;[2] docti, doctior. Wheder shall ȝe sey doctior, sownyng T afore I or þis letter C? (C) By what rule? For when þer comnyn two fowellis nexte after þis letter T, ȝif þe firste be I þe T shall haue þe sowne of C but S go nexte before T, as questio, or X, as mixtio, or H be put bectwene, as Mathias. Vnde versus:

Bine vocales T quandocumque secuntur,
I prior est quarum, tunc T pro C resonabit
S nisi precedat vt questio, vel nisi presit
X vt mixtio, vel nisi H fortasse sequatur.

Whan is he formed of þe datyf case? When þe noun of þe posityf degre is þe þryd declynson, þen þe comparatyf schall be formed of þe datyf case singler of his posityf in -i bi puttynge to þis sillable -or, as debili, debilior; forti, fortior. How many byn owte-sette of þe first party of þis rule? This noun sinister makyng sinisterior, and all þe

---

[1]Declinet terna positiuos norma secunda added in a lighter ink

[2]de(?) cano.

novnis of þe posityf degre þat haue a vowell before -vs lacken þe comparatyf degre, in þe stede of þe which comparatyf is take þe posityf w^{t} þis aduerbe magis, as pius, magis pius, pijssimus; idoneus, magis idoneus, idonijssimus; arduus, magis arduus, arduissimus. Vnde versus:

(fol.164^{r}) 61

Quod sit -ius vel -vis (-eus) aut -vus, -or caruere:
Per magis et primum quod comparat instituere.

How maken þese v nownys bonus, malus, magnus, paruus and multus com(pa)ryson? Vnruly. How is þat? Bonus maketh melior and optimus; malus, peior, pessimus; magnus, maior, maximus; paruus, minor, minimus; multus, plurimus; multa, plurima; multum, plurimum. Versus:

Res bona, res melior, res optima; res mala, peior,
Pessima; res magna, res maior, maxima rerum;
Parua, minor, minima dic, multis, plurimus addens:
70 Plurimus et multis sic comparat absque secundo.

How many byn oute-sette of þe secund party of þe rule? This noun iuuenis makyng iunior, and novnys hauyng a vowell afore -is: tenuis þe which lacketh þe comparatyf degre, potys makyth potior, and nequam makyth nequior. What gender ys euery noun of þe comparatyf degre? Comyn gendyr of þre, but þis nown senior þe which is only masculyn gendyr, as hic senior. Vnde versus:

Comparati(u)us in -or semper communis[1] habetur,
Mas. tantum senior cui feminium prohibetur.
80 -Or mutabit in -vs neutrum, senior remouemus.

Whiche nounys of posityf degre haue þe comparatyf and lacken þe superlatyf? Pa(te)nt per versus:

Ante, senex, iuuenis, adolessens: quattuor ista
Sola quidem solis vtuntur comparatiuis.
Proximus addatur, Ianuensis testificatur.

---

[1] MS communus

Whiche novnys of þe comparaty(f) degre byn euyn as many sillables as þe posityf degre? Patent per versus:

Voce gradus medij superant primos nisi quini:
Iunior et maior, peior, prior et minor. Ista
Et non plura suis equalia sunt positiuis.
Plus minus est vno, sint hec in pectoris imo.

Whiche novnys byn take oder while in þe posityf and oder while in þe superlatyf? Patent per versus:

Proximus, extremus, quibus intimus atque supremus,
Infimus addatur: duplex gradus hijs tribuatur.
Postremus sequitur, autoribus vt reperitur.

What[1] case will þe comparatyf degre after hym? Ablatyf case w^t owte a preposicion; or quam commyng betwene will cowpel case. Vnde versus:

Det medio gradui sextum casum bene iungi
Nominis aduerbi: Sum doctior insipienti.

How know ȝe þe superlatyf degre? For hit passeth his[2] posytyf w^t þis aduerbe maxime and endithe in Englisse in '-yste' a(s) 'wisyst',[3] 'blackyst',[3] þat ys to sey 'wisist[3]: most[3] wyse', 'blackyst: most[3] blacke'. Whereof ys þe superlatyf degre yformed? Of his positif. Of what case? Oder while of þe nominatyf case, oder while of þe genetyf case. When shall he be formed of þe nominatyf case?[4] When þe posytyf endith in R letter of what declynson soeuer hit be, þen þe superlatyf shall be formed of þe nominatyf by puttyng to of -rimus, vt pulcer, pulcerimus; miser, miserimus; paupe(r), pauperimus. When shall þe superlatyf be formed of þe genetyf of his posityf degre? When novnys of þe posityf

(fol.164^v)

---

[1] a stroke canc. [2] body canc.

[3] these words end with an 'er' abbreviation in MS

[4] I(?) canc.

degre of þe fyrst declynson and þe secund endyn in -vs in þe nominatyf case, þen þe superlatyf shall be formed of þe genetyf case singler endyng in -i puttyng to S and -simus, as clari, clarissimus; docti, doctissimus; oute-take þes v novnys bonus, malus, magnus, paruus and multis þat haue superlatifes oute of rule as þes versus showen: Res bona, res melior, et cetera. And when þe noun of þe posityf degre ys þrid declynson þen þe superlatyf degre shall be formed of þe genetyf case by[1] puttyng to -simus, vt fortis, fortyssimus. Vnde versus:

-Vsque secunda tenens superante(m) de genetiuo
Sic format: iunges S atque -simus superaddes;
In terna forma -simus addes cum genetiuo.
Sed cum R recti sibi vult -rimus associari.

How formyn þes vj novnys nuperus, vetus, maturus, dexter, sinister and memor[2] þe superlatyf degre? Thes twey novnys nuperus and maturus changyn -us into -rimus, as maturus, change þe -vs into -rimus and þen hit is maturimus;[3] nuperus, change þe -vs into -rimus and þen hit is nuperimus. But þis noun vetus changith -tus into -ter and taketh þer-to -rimus, as vetus, change -tus into -ter and þen hit ys veter, put þer-to -rimus and þen hit ys veterrimus. Þes two novnys dexter and sinister make þe superlatyf degre in -rimus and -timus, as dexter, dextimus, dexterimus; sinister, sinistimus, sinisterimus. Þis noun memor azenst þe rule makythe memorissimus. Vnde versus:

Cum rectus dabit R poteris -rimus addere semper;
Nuperus atque vetus, maturus eis societur.
In -rimus atque -timus dexterve sinister habetur,
Et memor excipitur: memorissimus hinc reperitur.

---

[1] pt canc. [2] MS adds of [3] MS adds But þis noun [vetus]

How formys þes v nownys agilis, gracilis, humilis, similis and facilis þe superlatyf degre? Of þe nominatyf case, by puttyng away -is and puttyng to -limus, as agilis, do away -is and þer leuyth agil; put þer-to -limus and þen hit is agillimus. Vnde versus:

Dant tibi quinque -limus que sistunt nomine f-a-g-u-s:
Hec agilis, gracilis, humilis, similis facilisque
150 Et sua composita sumunt -limus, LL duplicata.

What case construith þe superlatyf w^t? Genityf case plurell, or w^t genytyf case singler of a noun collectyf or of a noun þat betokeneth multitude in þe singeler noumbre, as: Frater meus est sapientissimus istius societatis; Deus est optima rerum. Pater meus est doctissimus istius ville. Versus:

(A folio is lost at this point.)

P. Cambridge University Library, MS Add. 2830, fols.54^{v}-56^{v}

(fol.54^{v})

De comparacionib⟨us⟩

Qwhat is a comparison? A liknes of diuerse thyngis in a certeyn accidens, as 'Iohn is wys, Thomas is wysere þan he, William is wysest þan alle'. Iohannes est sapiens, Thomas est sapiencior, Willelmus est sapientissimus omnium illorum. Qhat ⌜maner⌝ of nownys may receyue þat liknes? Nown adiectiuis betokenyng qualite or quantite þat may be maad moore or lesse w^{t} good centense, as 'qwhit', 'blak', 'wis', 'lewde', 'schort'. Qwhat is a qualite in ⌜a⌝ comparison? A thyng þat comyth to þe bodi and passyth awey from þe bodi ⌜and þe body⌝ is noþer more nor lesse, as 'fayr', 'fowl', 'qwyth', 'blak', 'lewde', 'louyng' and so of alle oþere. Qwhat is a quantite in a comparison? A thyng þat betokenyth lytilnes or mekilnes, as 'long', 'schort', 'litil', 'mekil'.

De gradibus comparacionis

How many degreis ben þer of comparison? Thre. Whech thre? Posityf, comparatif and þe superlatyf. How knowe ȝe þe positif degre? For it betokenyth qualite or quantite w^{t}outyn makyng more or lesse, and settyth þe grownd of alle oþere degreis of of comparison, as 'wys', 'qwyth', 'long', 'schort'. How knowe ȝe þe comparatif degre? For it passith his positif degre w^{t} þis aduerbe magis and endyth in ⌜þis⌝ Englych ⌜word⌝[1] '-er', as 'wyttur',[2] 'blaker', þat is to sey 'wyttur: more wyth', 'blakur: more blak'. How knowe ȝe þe superlatif degre? For it passith his positif[3] ⌜and his

---

[1] j canc. [2] MS wyttus [3] degre canc.

comparatif[1] w[t] þis aduerbe maxime and endyth in ⌜þis⌝ Englych[2] '-est', as 'wytiest', 'blakest: most blak'.[3] Qwerof is þe positif degre formyd? The positif degre is not formyd but of hym ben formyd in dyuerse obere degreis of comparison.

Whereof is þe comparatif degre formyd? Of his positif. Of what case of þe positif degre? Oþer qwile of þe genytif case and oþer qwile of þe datif case. How and qwenne of þe genytif case? If þe nown of þe positif degre be of þe ferste declenson and of þe secunde þan þe nown comparatif xal ben formyd of þe genitif case singuler endyng in -i be puttyng to
(fol.55[r]) þis sillabille | or, as doctus, docti, doctior; clarus, clari, clarior. And is declynyd on þis maner wise: hic et hec doctior et hoc doctius, genetiuo huius docciori, datiuo huic doctiori. When is he formyd of þe datif case? When þe nown of þe posityf degre is of þe þredde declension þan þe comparatif degre xal be formyd of þe datif case singuler endyng on -i puttyng to þis sillabil or, as debili, debilior; forti forcior. Owt of þe ferste party of þis rewle is outtake sinister makyng sinisterior; and alle þe nownys of þe positif degre þat haue a vowel before -vs or -is lakken þe comparatif degre, in þe stede of þe wheche is takyn þe positif degre w[t] þis aduerbe magis, as pius, magis pius, piissimus; arduus, magis arduus, arduissimus; idoneus, magis idoneus, idonissimus; tenuis, magis tenuis, tenuissimus. Versus:

> Quod fit -jus vel -vus, -eus aut -vis or caruere,
> Per magis et primum quod comparant[4] instituere.

And þese v nownys bonus, malus, magnus, paruus and multus han here comparatif degreis onrewlely, as þese vers schewyn:

---

[1] In left margin [2] in canc. [3] MS blakest [4] sic MS

Res bona, res melior, res optima; res mala,[1] peior,
Pessima; res magna, res maior, maxima rerum.
Parua, minor, minima dic, multis, plurimus addens;
Plurimus et multus se comparant[2] absque secundo.

Out of þe secunde party of þis rewle is out-takyn juuenis makyng iunior, and nownys hauyng a vowel before -is as tenuis þe lakken
60 þe comparatif degreis, and potus makyng pocior and nequam indeclinable makyng nequior.

Whereof is þe superlatif degre formyd? Of his positif. Of quat case of his positif degre? Other qwile of þe nominatif and oþer qwile of þe genytif case. Whenne xal þe superlatif degre ben formyd of þe nominatif case of his positif degre? Qwen þe nown of þe positif degre endyth in R lettere of quat declenson þat euere he be, þan þe nown superlatif xal be formyd of þe no(m)i(n)atif case singuler, masculine gender be puttyng[3] to -rimus, as pulcher: put þer-to -rimus and þan it (is)
(fol.55^{v}) pulcherimus, -a, -um; miser, mise|rimus, satur, saturrimus;
71 pauper, pauperrimus. And out-take dexter makyng dextimus and sinister makyng sinistimus and memor makyng memorissimus.

Vnde versus:

Cum tenet R rectus -rimus est illi sociandus,
Excipies dexter faciens -timus atque sinister,
Et memor excipitur, memorissimus hinc reperitur.

And alle þese v nownys agilis, gracilis, vmilis, similis and facilis and here compownys formyn here superlatif degreis of þe nominatif case puttyng awey -is and set þer-to -limus, as
80 agilis: do awey -is and set þer-to -limus and þan it is agillimus; and so of alle othere. Versus:

---

[1] MS male [2] sic MS [3] MS adds -o

Hec agilis, gracilis, vmilis, similis facilisque
Rite superlata de rectis dant[1] fore nata.
Demis[1a] -is a recto, -limus addis, agillimus esto,
Sic bene formatum quis duplex ll sit aratum.

Whenne xal þe superlatif degre be formyd of þe genytif case of his positif degre? Qwen þe nown of þe positif degre is of þe ferste declenson and of þe secunde endyng in -vs, in -a and in -vm þe superlatif degre xal be formyd of þe genytif case synguler endyng in -i puttyng þerto S and -simus, as clarus, clari, clarissimus; doctus, docti, doctissimus; out-take þese v nownys bonus, malus, magnus, paruus and multus þe qweche haue þe superlatiues out of þe rewle as þese vers schewyn:

Res bona, res melior, res optima et cetera.

And also out-take nuperus makyng nuperrimus all only and maturus makyng maturrimus onrewly and maturrissimus rewly.

Versus:

-Vsque secunda tenens[2] superantem de genetivo
Sic format: iunges S atque -simus superaddes.
Res bona, res melior, res optima; res mala,[3] peior,
Pessimus; res magna, res maior, maxima rerum;
Parua, minor, minima dic; multis, plurimus addens:
Plurimus et multus se comparant[4] absque secundo.
Nuperus adde -rimus sed non -simus hoc reperimus,
Dat -rimus atque -simus maturus et hoc bene scimus.

(fol.56[r]) Also nown positiuus of þe thred declenson þe qweche han superlatiuis, w[t] outyn endyng in -r and w[t] oute þese v nownys agilis, gracilis, vmilis, similis, facilis w[t] here compownys, and vetus makyng veterimus, takyn to here genitif case synguler -simus and makyn here superlatiuis degreis, as fortis,

---

[1] MS dantur [1a] MS Nemis

[2] Superla canc. [3] MS male [4] sic MS

fortissimus; felicis, felicissimus. Versus:

In terna formo -simus addens cum genitiuo,
Sed tamen -r recti sibi uult -rimus associari,
Et vetus adiunge formando veterimus inde.
Dant tibi quinque -limus que signant nomine f-a-g-u-s:
Hec agilis, gracilis, vmilis, similis facilisque
Et sua composita, que dant -limus, ll dupplicata.

W^t what case construit þe posityf degre? W^t non case because of his degre but because of his significacion he may be construid w^t alle heme gouernyng, out-take þe nominatif and þe vocatif; w^t a genytif vt Rex est dignus laudis, w^t a datif vt Ego sum similis patri meo, w^t an acusatif ex vi sinotheges vt Sum albus faciem, w^t an ablatif vt Pater meus est diues auro.

W^t what case xal þe comparatif degre be construid w^t because of his degre? W^t an ablatif case of eyþer nownbre w^toute a preposicion, and w^t a nominatif case quam aduerbe comyng betwyn, vt Sum doctior socio meo vel socijs meis, vel doctior quam socius meus vel quam socij mei. Also a nown of þe comparatif degre because[1] of his significacion may be construid w^t alle swych case as wel as his positif degre be construid w^t, and þerto beryth wytnesse þese vers of Garlond. Versus:

Quam uult naturam gradus offerri sibi casus,
Illam fructuram uult quisque secundus et vnus.

Wyth a nominatif case quam aduerbe comyng betwyn, vt Ego sum doctior quam socius meus, w^t a genytif case vt Magister est dignior laudis hostiario suo, w^t a datif case vt Sum similior patri meo quam matri mee, w^t an acusatif case ex vi sinotheges vt Sum albior faciem sorore mea, w^t a vocatif case quam aduerbe

---

[1] -u- from j

comyng betwyn vt O Iohannes melior quam pulcher, grossior quam alte, tu es amabilis vel amandus, w^{t} an ablatif case vt Pater meus est diuitior[1] auro patre tuo.

Wyth what case xal þe superlatif degre be construid w^{t} because of his degre? W^{t} a genytif case plurer betoknyng
(fol.56^{v}) mo thyngis | þan ij, vt Ego sum doctissimus omnium sociorum meorum, or w^{t} a genytif case singuler of a nown collectif or of a nown of place, vt Rex est valentissimus gentis sue vel potentissimus regni sui; Iohannes est pauperrimus istius plebis et miserimus huius ville. Also for cause of his significacion he may be construid w^{t} alle swyche case as wel as his positif degre be construid and þer-to beryth wytnesse þese vers of Garlond:

Quam uult naturam gradus etcetera.

With a genytif case vt Sum doctissimus gramatice omnium hic presencium; w^{t} a datif case vt Sum simillimus patri meo omnium filiorum suorum, w^{t} an acusatif case vt Sum albissimus faciem omnium fratrum meorum, w^{t} an ablatif case vt Sum dignissimus laude omnium sociorum meorum.

Expliciunt Comparaciones quod Hardgraue de B.

Positiuis

How formist þu an aduerbe of þe positif degre? Oþer qwile of þe genytif case and oþer qwile of þe datyf case and oþer qwile of þe nominatif case. Quanne of þe genytif case? Quan þe positif degre is of þe ferste declenson and þe secunde, as nominatiuo doctus, -a, -um; genitiuo docti, -te, -ti.

---

[1] MS diues

Docte, feminyn gender, is þe aduerbe. Quan of þe datif case? Quan þe positif degre is þe thredde declenson, as nominatiuo hic, hec fortis and hoc -te; genitiuo huius fortis; datiuo huic forti. Put þerto a -ter and þan it is fortiter. Quan of þe nominatif case? Quan þe positif degre endit in -ns or in -rs. As how? As nominatiuo hic, hec, hoc sapiens: turne þis -s into a -ter and þanne it (is) sapienter. Nominatiuo hic, hec, hoc solers: turne þis -s into a -ter and þan it is solerter.

Comparatiuis[1]

How formist þu an aduerbe of þe comparatif degre? Of þe nominatif case, neuter gender, singuler nounbre, as nominatiuo hic, hec docior et hoc -cius. Doctius is þe aduerbe.

Superlatiuis

How formist þu an aduerbe of þe superlatif degre? Of þe genityf case, feminyn gendre, singuler noumbre, as nominatiuo doctissimus, -a, -um; genitiuo doctissimi, doctissime, doctissimi. Doctissime is þe aduerbe.

---

[1] MS comparatiꝯ

Q. Oxford, Bodleian Library, Printed Book Douce D.238(2), fols. B5^{v}-B6^{r}

(fol.B5^{v}) (At foot after colophon of printed text.)
-Ram, -rim, -ro mutant I ⌜in E⌝, -sem, -sem, -se retinent I. |

(fol.B6^{r}) Wat ys a comparyson? A lykenes. What nowys may receyue þat lykenes? Nownys adiectyfys betokynyng qualite or quantite. Qwhat ys a qualite? A thyng that comys to þe body and passus awey fro þe body and makys þe body nodyr more ne lesse, as 'fayr', 'fowole', 'qwyght', 'blake'. Qwath ys a quantyte? A thyng þat betokynyth meculnesse or leytylnesse, as 'long', 'schorth', 'brod'.

How many degreys of comparysons ben there? III. Qwych iij? ⁻Þe posytyf degre, the comparatyf degre, þe superlatyf degre. How know ȝe þe posytyf degre? For yt settys grownd off all odyr degreys of comparysons, as 'wyse'. How know ȝe þe comparatyf degre? For yt passyt þe posityff degre w^{t} þis aduerbe 'more' as 'more wyse' or 'wyser'. How know ȝe þe superlatyf degre? W^{t} thys aduerbe 'most' as 'most wyse' or 'wysest'.

W^{t} qwhat case wyll þe posytyff degre constriu w^{t}? W^{t}[1] ⌜no⌝ case thowrow þe vertu[2] of hys howyn kynde. W^{t} qwat case wyll þe comparatyff degre constriu w^{t}? W^{t} þe ablatyff case w^{t}owt a quam, or ellys w^{t} a quam þat wyll copyll lyke case, as Ego sum doccior Wyllelmo vel quam Willelmus. W^{t} qwath case wyll þe superlatyf degre constriu w^{t}? W^{t} þe genityff plurell betokenyng many thyng, as Ego sum doctissimus poetarum, or ellys w^{t} þe genityf case singuler of a nowne collectyf þat betokynyth

---

[1] þe uocatyf canc. [2] a stroke canc.

as mekyl in þe singuler numbyr as a nodyr nowne dothe in þe plurell numbyr, as populus, gens; and theis beyn nownys collectywys þat beyn conteynyd in þis verse:

Sunt collectiua populus, gens, plebs quoque turba.

What xal ȝe doo when ȝe xall make a comparyson? I xall declyne my posytyff degre be hymself, my comparatyf degre be hymself and my superlatyff degre be hymself. I xall declyne my posytyf degre to I cum at a case þat endys as nominatiuo doctus, -a, -um, genitiuo docti; do ther-to an -or and then ys yt doccior, and then ys my comparatyf degre made. As docti, do þer-to an S and a -simus an þen ys doctissimus and þen ys my superlatyf degre made.

R. Oxford, Bodleian Library, MS Rawlinson D 328, fols.80^{r}-83^{r}

(This text is included in a version of the Formula, given below as text CC.)

(fol.80^{r}) How many degreys of comparson ben þer? III. Wych iij? Þe positiue degre, þe comparatiue degre and þe superlatiue. Wherof ys þe positiue degre y-furmyd? He ys not y-furmyd, but al oþer degreys of comparson byt furmyd of hym and be of noþer.

De furmacione comparatiui gradus

Wherof ys þe comparatiue degre y-furmyd? Owth of hijs positiue? Of what case? Oþer wyse of þe genitiue case and oþer of þe datiue case. When ys he y-furmyd owth of þe genitiue case and when of þe datiue? When þe nowne of þe positiue degre ys þe[1] fyrst declinson and þe ii^{de} þan þe comparatiue schall be furmyd of þe genitiue case singuler endyng in -i settyng to þis sillabill[2] -or, as nominatiuo albus, -a, -um, genitiue albi, -e, -i, settyng to þis sillabyll -or and then hit wol be nominatiue hic et hec albior et hoc albius.

De datiuo casu

When ys he y-furmyd oute of þe datiue case? When þe nowne of þe positiue degre ys þe iij^{de} declynson and then[3] þe comparatiue schall be furmyd of þe datiue case singuler

---

[1]fry canc. [2]or and then hit wolbe nominatiue canc.

[3]MS ther

puttyng to thys sillabyll -or, as nominatiuo hic et hec fortis et hoc forte, genitiuo huius fortis, datiuo huic forti, put to þis sillabill -or and then hit wol be nominatiuo hic et hec forcior et hoc forcius. Þe furmacion of both casus of both said byth contaynid yn thes verse. Vnde[1] versus:

(fol.80[v]) Si tibi declinet positiuum norma secunde
Taliter inde gradum debes[2] formare secundum:
I breuias quem dat genetiue et -or superaddes.
Terne consimili formabunt more datiuj
Iunior inde gradum susterior cape dexteriorque,
Quod tibi prebet, -icus, hijs iungas testis amicus.

De excepcionibus furmacione a genitiuo[3] casu comparatiui gradus

Oute of þe fyrst rule bith accept thes v nownys: bonus, malus, magnus, paruus and multus, þe which makyth comparson oute of rule as thes maner wyse: bonnus, melior, optimus; bona, melior, optima; bonum, melius, optimum; malus, peior, pessimus; male, peior, pessima; malum, peius, pessimum; magnus, maior, maximus; magna, maior, maxima; magnum, maius, maximum; paruus, minor, minimus; parua, minor, minima; paruum, minus, minimum; multus, plurimus; multa, plurima; multum, plus, plurimum.

Res bona, res melior, res optima; res ⌜mala, peior⌝, [4]
Pessima; res magna, res maior, maxima rerum;
Parua, minor, minima; dic multis, plurimus addens;
Plurimus et multis sic comparat absque secundo.

---

[1] vnde canc. [2] -s from t [3] s canc.

[4] This line glossed in English.

Also oute[1] of þis fyrst rule bith accept thes v nownys magnificus, murificus, munificus, beneficus and honorificus,[2] | (fol.81[r]) þe which lackyth[3] þe comparatiue degre, and they berowith of old positiuis þat be not in vse as magnificens, mirificens, beneficens and honorificens. Magnificen⟨s⟩ makyth magnificencior, mirificens makyth mirificencior, benificens makyth benificencior, honorificens makyth honorificencior. And also bith accept all nownys of þe ij[de] declinson, amicus makyth amiˈciˀcior, inimicus makyth inimicicior, þe whych makyth owte of rule as h(i)t ys y-sayd abow yn thys verse. Vnde versus:

Si tibi decline(t), et cetera.
Iunior inde senesterior[4] cape dexteriorque,
Quod tibi prebet, -icus hijs iungas testis amicus.

Item excipiuntur a formacione comparatiuj gradus a genetiuo casu sui positiuj nomina que sequntur. Also byth accept of þe fyrst rule all nownys havyng a fowle next afor -vs, þe whych lackyth þe comparatiue degre, in whos stede ys take þe positiue degre w[t] þis aduerbe magis, as idoneus, (magis idoneus), idonissimus, pius,[5] magis pius, piissimus.

Que per -eus vel -ius, -vis aut -vus or caruere,
Per magis et primum quod comparat instituere.

Item excipiuntur a formacione comparatiuj gradus a genitiuo casu suj positiui nomina que secuntur. Oute of þe ij[de] rule ys accept this nowne iuuenis þe which makyth iunior as hit is shewid abow yn þis verse.

Si tibi declinet positiuum, et cetera. |

---

[1]MS outo [2]The nouns glossed in English. [3]MS laclyth
[4]pa canc. [5]MS paruus

(fol.81[v]) Also byth accept thys ij nownys neguam and potus. Nequam[1] makyth nequior, nequissimus; potus makyth pocior, potissimus. Also byth accept of þe ij[de] rule nownys of þe iij[de] declinson endyng in -is havyng a fowle next before -is þe which lackyth þe comparatiue degre and beth[2] fulfellid by there positiuis w[t] thys aduerbe magis, as tenuis, magis tenuis, teniss⌜i⌝me, and other mo as hit is shewid abow in thys verse:

Que per -eus vel -ius, -vis aut -vus, et cetera.

The comparatiue degre excidith his positiuis by on sillabyll or ij, except thys nownys þat byth contaynid yn these verse, and ys lasse þen his[3] positiue as thes comparatiue degre plus.

Voce gradus medij superant primos[4] nisi quini:
Iunior et maior,[5] peior, prior et minor ista.
Hec et non plura suis equalia sunt positiuis,
Plus minus est primo; sunt hec in pectoris imo.

All comparatiuis endyng in -or byth þe comyng gender of to, as nominatiuo hic et hec fortior et hoc fortius, and makyth þe ablatiue case singuler in -e[6] and in -i except ⌜comparatiue degre⌝ senior, þe whyche ys þe masculyn gender all only and makyth þe ablatiue case synguler in -e only. Unde versus:

Comparatiuus[7] in -or semper communis habetur,
Mas. tantum senior cui feminium prohibetur.
Adiectiua senex, seniorque simul recitentur;
Hic tantum sumunt, generis tamen omnis habentur.
-I vel -e postulat -or, sed dic tantum seni⌜o⌝re.

---

[1]Si tibi declinet canc. (an earlier note) [2]MS heth
[3]h- from y [4]MS primus [5]-i- from g [6]ex canc.
[7]MS Comparatiuis

De formacione superlatiui gradus

⌜Of⌝ when ys superlatiue degre y-furmyd? Owt of hys
(fol.82r) p⟨ositif⟩. | Of what case? Wother whyle of the nominatiue case and wop⟨er⟩ whyle of þe genytiue case and wopер whyle of datiue case. When hys y-furmyd owte ⌜of⌝ þe nominatiue case? When þ⟨e⟩ nown of[1] þe positiue degre yndyth in R letter w⟨hat⟩ declenson þat euer he be, þe schal þe superlatiue degre be fu⟨r⟩myd owte of[1] þe nominatiue case indyng in -r putyn⟨g⟩ therto þis sillabil[2] -rymus, as pulcher, sette to a -rim⟨us⟩ and then hyt wyll be pulcherimus; niger, nigerimus; pauper, pauperimus.

Cum rectus tenet -r poteris -rimus addere semper;
⌜Nuperus atque vetus, maturus detero iungis.⌝
In -rimus atque -timus dexterve sinister[3] habetur,
Et memor excipitur[4] memorissimus hunc reperitur.

Oute of thys rule ys accept dexter makyn dextimus ⌜and⌝ senister maken senistimus, but when they makyth dexterimus and senisterimus then þey byth not accept, and memor ys acce⟨pt⟩ þe whych makyth memorissimus; and also byth accept iiij superlatiuis nuperimus, maturimus, veterimus ⌜and⌝ dexterimus þe whych comyth of nownys not endyng in -r and makyth -rimus, as of[5] nuperus, nuperimus; maturus, materimus, vetus, veterimus;[6] dexter, dexterimus; and thys excepcions byth[7] sa⌜i⌝d abow in thes verse:

Cum rectus tenet -r, et cetera.

---

[1] repeated [2] sy canc. [3] si- from se
[4] MS exciperitur [5] nuperimus ⌜nuperus(?)⌝ canc.
[6] Nuperus, maturus and vetus are glossed in English
[7] MS hyth

De formacione superlatiuj gradus a genitiuo[1] casu.

When ys þe superlatiue degre y-furmyth oute of þe genytiue case? When þe nowne of þe positiue degre ys þe fyrst declynson and þe secunde endyng not in -r, than þe superlatiue shall be furmyth oute of þe genitiui case synguler endyng in -i, puttyng therto S and -simus, as nominatiuo doctus, -a, -um, genitiuo docti, -e, -i put to S and -simus, and then hit wol be nominatiuo doctissim⟨us⟩, ⌜-a, -um; clari, clarissimus; albi, albissimus⌝.|

(fol.82[v])

Excepcio formacionis superlatiui gradus a genitiuo casu

Oute of thys rule bith accept thes x nownys said before: bonus, malus, magnus, paruus and multus, magnificus, murificus, minificus, beneficus and honorificus, and also byth accept thes ij nownis nuperus and maturus þe which makyth þe superlitiue degre in -rimus as hit is shewid abow in these verse:

Cum rectus tenet -r, et cetera.

Also byth accept thys nowne proximus, for he may be ⌜both⌝ positiue (and) superlatiue: when he is idem quod propinquus,[2] -a, -um[3] then he ys þe positiue, and when he ys idem quod prope w[t] his[4] aduerbe maxime then he ys þe superlatiue degre.

De formacione superlatiui gradus a datiuo casu

When ys þe superlatiue degre y-formyd oute of þe datiue case? When þe nowne of þe positiue degre ys þe iij[de] declynson endyng not in -r, then shall þe superlatiue degre be formyd

---

[1] sa canc. [2] MS proxinusuus [3] a minim canc. after -u- [4] -s from t

oute of þe datiue case by puttyng a S ⌜and⌝ -simus as nominatiuo hic et hec fortis et hoc forte, genitiuo huius fortis, datiuo huic forti; forti, put to a S and -simus and then hit wol be nominatiuo fortissimus,[1] -a, -um; felici, put to S and -simus and hit wol be filicissimus, -a, -um.

Excepcio formacionis superlatiuj gradus de datiuo casu

Oute of thys rule bith accept thes v nownys: agilis, gracilis,[2] facilis, humilis and similis, þe which byth furmyd oute of þe nominatiue case synguler chaungyng -is into a -limus and then hit wol be agillimus, -ma, -um, and so of oþer mo.

Dant tibi quinque -limus que signa⌜n⌝t nomine f-a-g-u-s:
Hec[3] agilis, gracilis, humilis, similis facilisque
Et sua composita que duplici sunt ll habenda.

(fol.83r)

Item alie excepcionis

And also bith accept þes v nownys (ante, subter), senex, iuuenis[4] and adolescens, þe which lackyth þe superlatiue degre.

Ante, senex, iuuenis, adolescens, subter et addis:
Sola quidem solis vtuntur comparatiuis.

Item alie excepcionis

Also byth accept thes þat bith contaynyd yn these verse folowyng: when they bith of þe positiue degre then þey lackyth þe superlatiue degre, and when they bith superlatiue degre then they comyth of aduerbe as hit is shewid by these verse.

Vnde versus:

---

[1] -ti- from tu [2] glossed in English [3] -e- from i
[4] ad canc.

Proximus, extremus, quibus intimus adde, supremus,
Infimus addatur: duplex gradus hijs tribuatur.
Postremus sequitur, autoribus vt reperitur.

190 All thes aduerbis,[1] preposicions þat bith conteynid yn these verses felowyng bith put yn þe stede of þe positiue degre.

Bis septem dicas aduerbia prepo(s)itasve
Quas nostri patres posuere loco positiui:
Ante, citra, prope, post, extra, supra et infra
Intra, nuper, osis vltraque, pridem penitusque.
Dicit osis Grecus, ocior parit[2] in⌜de⌝ Latinus.[3]
Addere pene quidam seu penes[4] addere querunt.

Ante, anterior.
190' Citra, citerior.
Prope, propior, proximus.
Post, posterior, postremus.
Extra, exterior, extremus.
Supra, superior, supremus.[5]
Infra, inferior, infimus.
Intra, interior, intimus.
Nuper, nuperior.[6]
Osis, ocior.
Vltra, ulterior, ultimus.
Pridem, prior, primus.
Penitus, penituor.[7]
Sepe, sepior, sepissimus.

---

[1] -i- from e [2] -i- from e [3] -u- from i [4] -es from as
[5] -re- from er [6] from nuperimus [7] sic MS

S. Worcester Cathedral, MS F.123, fols.99vb-100ra

(This text is inserted in a copy of the Accedence, given as text M above. It has been erased and the following text and tentative reconstruction is based on a transcription made under ultra-violet light.)

(f.99vb) De comparacione

How ⟨mony⟩ deg⟨res of comparison ben ther? III.⟩ Whiche ⟨iij? Þe posityf, þe⟩ compar⟨a⟩tyf ⟨and þe superlatyf.⟩ How knowest þu ⟨þe positif degr⟩e? ⟨For it betokenyth qualite or quantite .....⟩lls ⟨w^{t}owt makyng more or less, and settyth þe grownd⟩ of ⟨alle oþere degres of comparison, as 'wys', 'white', 'long', 'short'⟩. How ⟨kn⟩owist ⟨þu þe⟩ comparatif deg⟨re? For it passith his positif degre with þis aduerbe magis and his Englisshe endyth in '-er' as 'whitter', 'blacker'⟩: f⟨or to say 'whitter:⟩ more wh⟨ite', 'blacker: more black'.⟩ How knowest ⟨þu þe superlat⟩if de⟨gre?⟩ For he p⟨a⟩ss⟨yth⟩ his pos⟨itif degre w^{t} þis aduerbe maxime⟩ and his Englisshe ⟨endyth in '-ist', as⟩ 'whittist', 'bl⟨ackist': for to say 'whittist:⟩ mo⟨st⟩ white', 'bla⟨cki⟩st: ⟨m⟩os⟨t b⟩lacke'.

De ⟨...⟩tate comparacionis

Whad is a comparson? A lykenes of ⟨diuers⟩ thyngv⟨s. Whad maner⟩ of nowmes ⟨may receyue þat lykenes?⟩ Nownus ⟨ad⟩ecty⟨ves betokening qualite or quantite⟩ th⟨at may⟩e be made (more) or lasse by goode sent⟨ence⟩.

100ra) De qualitate in comparacione

Whad is a qualite in comparson? A thing that longyth to the body, and passith away fro the body, and the body is nowther more ne lasse, as 'wise', 'feyr', 'connyng'.

De quantitate in comparacione

Whad is a quantite in comparson? A thing that betokenyth lytelnis or myches as[1] 'short', 'long', 'lytel', 'mychel'.[2]

De formacione graduum comparacionis

Wherof is the posityf degre y-formed? The posityf degre so is not y-formed but alle other degrees of comparson byn formed of hym? Of whom is the comparatyf degre formed? Of his posityf degre. Of whad case of his posityf degre? Other while of the g⟨e⟩nitif case and other while of the datif case. Whenne is he formed of ⟨the genitif case and when⟩ of the ⟨datif case?⟩

(The rest of the folio is cut away.)

---

[1] repeated

[2] MS mychest

T. Aberystwyth, N.L.W., MS NLW 423D, fols.11^{v}-17^{r}

(fol.11^{v}) In how mony maner of wyse shall þu bygyn to mak Latten and to construe by ryȝtwyse ordyr of construccion? In v. In whych v? By a vocatif case, by a nominatif or by sumwhat set yn/þe stytt of a nominatif case and a verbe of certayn person, by an ablatif case absolute, and a verbe inpersonell. How bygyme ȝe by a vocatif case to mak your Latten? As 'Willam[1] make fyre', Willelme fac ignem. How by a nominatif case and a verbe of certayn person? As 'Þe mayster syttis yn þe scole', Magister sedet in scola. How by sumwhat sett yn þe stud of a nominatif case? As 'To dyne betyme shall comfort monys hert', 'Iantari tempestiue confortabit humanum cor. How by an ablatif case absolute? As 'The mayster techyng yn þe scole, (I am agayste)', Magistro docente in scola, ego sum perteritus. How by a verbe inpersonell? As 'Me syttis yn the scole', Sedetur in scola.

What shall þu doo when thow hast a matter to mak Latten by? I shall loke owte my principall werbe personell and loke whedyr hyt[2] betokyns 'to do' or 'to suffre'; and yf hyt betokyns 'to doo' the doer shal be nominatif case and þe suffrer sech case as þe verbe wyll have aftyr hym; and yf my[3] principall verbe personall betokyn to suffre the suffrer shal be nominatif case and þe doer ablatif case w^{t} a preposicion; and yf my principall verbe be a verbe inpersonell y shal begyn att hyt to make my Latten and to constyr. How shall þu know, yf þer be mony verbys yn a matter, whych ys thy principall verbe? Euermore the furst verbe ys my principall verbe, butt

---

[1] MS willm^{a} [2] b canc. [3] verbe canc.

yf hyt com nexte to a relatif or ellys be lyk to an infinitif mode. Whereby knowystow when hyt comys nexte to a relatif? When hyt comys nexte to thys English worde[1] 'that' or 'the whych'. Whereby knowystow when hyt ys lyke to an infinitif mode? When y have þis syne[2] 'to' as 'to love' or 'to be lovyd'.

Sequitur latinitas

'A chyrch ys a place þe whych Cristunnen mecull ben holdyn to love.' Whych ys thy principall verbe in þis reson? 'Ys'. When sum, es, fui ys thy principall verbe how shall þu know whych ys þi nominatif case? By þis Englysh 'Whoo or what?', as 'Whoo or what ys? The chyrch (ys)'. What case ys 'the
(fol.12r) chyrch'? Þe nominatif case. What parte of spech ys 'the whych'? A relatif. What has a relatif? Antecedent.[3] Whereby knowystow an antecedent? For hyt goys before the relatif and ys rehersid of the relatif. How knowystow a relatif? For hyt makys rehersyng of thyngis sayd before. What case, what gendyr, what nowmbur shall the relatif be? Such case, such gendur, such nowmbre as the anticedent shul be yf he stode þer as þe relatif stondis, and þe relatif were putt away. Aliter sic: what case shall þe relatif be when þer comys a nominatif case betwene the relatif and þe verbe? Then þe relatif shal be such case as the verbe wyll have aftyr hym. And yf þer com no nominatif case betwene the relatif and the verbe, then the relatif shal be nominatif case to the verbe, butt yf the verbe be a verbe inpersonell. Then the relatif shal be such case as the verbe inpersonell wyl be construet w[t]. Is that soth all way? Ye, but yf that verbe

---

[1] w(?) canc. [2] as canc. [3] MS antecedent as elsewhere

inpersonell have hys casuell word aftyr hym. Then þe relatif shal be such case as the infinitif mode wyll have aftyr hym. How shall thow say on Latten thys English before sayd? Ecclesia est locus quem Christiani tenentur multum diligere. Quem: what[1] gendur? Masculin gendur? Why soo? For to the nexte antecedent shall þe relatif be refert, butt yf the sentens let, as in thys Latten: Canis tuus occidit ouem meam quem ego occidam. Thys relatif quem accordis w^t^ the furst anticedent in gendur and nott w^t^ the later by enchosyn of the sentens.

Ibo ad locum qui[2] vel quod est nouum castrum. What gendur is qui vel quod? The masculin gendyr and newtur. Why so? For when y have a relatif sett betwene ij nownus substantiuis of diuers gendyrs longyng both to on thyng hyt may acorde w^t^ aythyr substantif in gendur. Vnde versus:

Quando relatiuum generum casus variorum
Inter se claudunt qui rem spectant ad eandem,
Per genus hoc poterit vtrilibet assimilari:
Est pia stirps Iesse quem Christum dicimus esse.

Vtinam essem episcopus, qui vocor Wilelm(u)s, sub spe releuandi paupertatem amicorum meorum. Episcopus: what case? (fol.12^v^) The nominatif case. Why soo? For sum, es, fui ys a verbe copulatif and wyll cowpull lyk case. What maner of verbus haue strenght to cowpull lyke case? Verbys substantiuis and uerbus vocatiuus and verbus havyng here strength. How mony verbus substa~n~tiuis bene þer? III. Whych iij? Sum, fio, existo. Vnde versus:

Ars substantiua tria dat tantummodo verba:
Sum simul existo, fio, nil amplius addo.

How mony verbys vocatiuis byn ber? V. Whych v? Patent per versus:

---

[1] case canc. [2] q canc.

Quinque vocatiua dicas tantummodo verba:
Nominor, appellor sic nuncupor et[1] voco, dicor.

What maner of verbus haue strength to cowpyll case, owte-take verbus substantiuis and verbys vocatiuis and verbys havyng here strength? Verbus passiuis, ut Ordinor acolitus, Teneor sapiens; and verbus as þei were passiuis, ut Vapulo ignarus; and verbus betokenyng stuping or[2] meuyng of bodi, ut Curro celer, or meuyng of saule, ut Meditor sapiens; and verbus þat betokynyng rest, ut Sedeo tristis; and verbus þat betokyn semyng, ut Appareo bonus, Immineo celsus.

De genitiuo

Istud doleum est plenum vini vel vino, vel vacuum -ni vel -no. (Vino vel vino): what case? Genitif and þe ablatif. Why soo? For all nownus adiectiuis betokynyng fulnes or emtines wyll constur w^t þe genitif and þe ablatif. Vnde versus:

Que plenum signant vel que vacuata figurant
Iunguntur sextis, ut scribitur, et genitiuis:
Vini vel (vi)no duo dolea plena videto.

De verbis personalibus constructis cum genitiuis

Abstineo irarum vel desino viciorum. Irarum and viciorum: what case? Genitif case. Why soo? For thes ij verbys desino and abstineo wyll constur w^t genitif case ex vi transicionis personalis. Versus:

Desinit, abstineo genitiuis iungere curo.

Dominor huius ville vel huic ville cuius incolarum vel incolis miserebor. What casus ville, incolarum vel incolis? Genitif and datif. Why soo? For dominor, -aris and miserior, -eris wyll constur w^t genitif and[3] datif, ex vi transicionis personalis. Versus:

---

[1] vod canc. [2] mvw canc. [3] ablatif canc.

Da dominor ternis misereri siue secundis.
Et sibi vult iungi iiij^{tum} casum misereri:
Nostri vel nobis vel nos Ihesu misereri.

De verbis personalibus indifferenter constructis cum genitiuis, accusatiuis et ablatiuis

(fol. 13^{r}) Ricardus et Willelmus indigent diuine gracie, diuinam graciam vel diuinia gracia. Diuine gracie, diuinam graciam vel diuina gracia: what case? Genitif, accusatif and þe ablatif. Why soo? For thes ij verbys egeo, -es; indigeo, -es wyll construe w^{t} genitif, accusatif and ablatif.

Des iiij^{tis}, sextis eget, indiget et genitiuis:
Indigeo rem, re coniunge rei, mihi care,
In quem respicias. Hoc ass(er)it ipse Papias.

Indigent: what nowmbur? Plurell nowmbur. Why soo? For ij nominatif case singler w^{t} an et coniunccion betwene wyll have the verbe plurell, and ij nownus singler wyth an et coniunccion betwene wyll have a relatif plurell.

De verbis personalibus constructis cum datiuis.

Obuiemus regi et regine venientibus Oxonia. Regi et regine: what case? Datif case: Why soo? For all verbus conteynyng yn thes versus wyll construe w^{t} datif case:

Obuio, parco, placet, noceo, respondeo, seruit
Precipit, opponit, concludo iunge datiuis,
Supplicat, arridet, faueo, vaco, proficit, heret,
Subuenit addatur, succurrit, propiciatur,
Congruit, compacior, confert, succedit, adulor,
Insidet, imponit, conuicior, improperabit,
Sufficit, aspirat, valedico, gratulor, astat,
Imminet ac equipollet vel obedit et obstat,
Occurrit, restat et cedo, quando locvm dat,
Derogo, condoleo, preindico, detraho, defert,
Suppetit hijs iungas. Que sunt componit eis dat.
Hec et quamplura ternis coniungere cura.

De verbis constructis cum duobus accusatiuis

Postulo Deum graciam bene discendi, qui doceor gramaticam.

Graciam: what case? Accusatif case. Why soo? For all þe verbus contenyng yn þes versus 'Postulo, posco, peto' woll construe w^t^ dowbyll accusatif case betokonyng dyuerse thyngus.

Gramaticam: what case? Accusatif case. Why soo? For all þe verbys[1] passiuis comyng of the actiuis þe whych bene construet w^t^ dowbyll accusatif case may construe w^t^ þe latter accusatif case. Vnde versus:

(fol.13^v^)

Postulo, posco, peto, doceo, rogo, flagito, celo,
Exuo cum vestit, monet, induo, calceo, cingo:[2]
Accusatiuos geminos hec verba requirunt,
Passiuis quorum postremus iungitur horum.

De verbis constructis cum ablatiuis

Vtor rubeo capicio. Capicio: what case? Ablatif case. Why soo? For all the verbus contenit in þes versus wull construe w^t^ ablatif case. Vnde versus:

Vescitur et fruitur, caret, vtitur atque potitur:
Hec ablatiuos[3] transicione regunt.
Hijs iungas fungor, et deficio sociatur.

How mony yngyngis of gerundiuis byn þer? III. Whych iij? -Di, -do, -dum. Whereby knowystow a gerundif in -di? When y have a word like to an infinitif mode comyng aftyr tempus or est or a nowne substantif y shall have a gerundif in -di. Exemplum: 'Masse ydone hit ys tyme to brek owre fast'. Latinum: Missa finita tempus est soluendi nostrum ieiunium. I shall have a gerundif in -di as þus: 'The Pope has power to assoyle Cristunmen leuyng in God of here synnys', Noster Papa habet potestatem absoluendi Christianos confitentes

---

[1] actiuis casu. [2] MS cigno [3] MS adds in

in Deo de suis peccatis. Whereby knowystow a gerundif in -do? In ij maners. In whych ij maners? When þis English 'in' comus before a worde that yndyth yn '-yng' w^{t}owte a substantif sett to hym y shall have a gerundif in -do w^{t} thys preposicion in, as thus: 'In feghtyng mony men byn wondit, mony mamed and mony slayn', In dimicando quamplurimi homines sunt vulnerati
190 et quamplurimi mutilati et quamplurimi occisi; In discendo gramaticam sapienciam. Whereby knowystow a gerundif in -do in the secunt maner of wyse? Whe(n) the English of a participull of the presentens comus aftyr a substantif y may ches[1] whedur y wyll have a gerundif in -do or a participull of the presentens, as thus: 'The mayster ys buse yn the scole ynformyng hys discipuls, of the whych he reseuys euery yere grete vauntache', Magister est assiduus in scola formans vel informando suos discipulos de quibus recipit annuatim magnum[2] emolumentum; Mercatores multum lucrantur et diuites efficiuntur
(fol.14^{r}) care vendendo vel vendentes. | Whereby knowystow a gerundif in
191 -dum? In ij maners. In whych ij maners? Oþer whyle w^{t} ad preposicion and other whyle w^{t}owte ad preposicion. When shall y have a gerundif in -dum w^{t} ad preposicion? When the English of an infinitif mode comus aftyr a reson and tellus the cause of the reson y shall have a gerundif in -dum w^{t} ad preposicion, as thus: 'Men goon to battell to fezte w^{t} here enmys', Viri vadunt ad bellum ad dimicandum cum suis inimicis. When shall y have a gerundif in -dum w^{t}owte ad preposicion? When the English of an infinitif mode comus aftyr sum, es, fui, and sum,
200 es, fui have no nominatif case before hym, I shall have a gerundif in -dum w^{t}owte ad preposicion, as thus: 'Hyt ys to

---

[1] MS sech [2] s canc.

w^t^stond owre enmys purposyng to destrye owre reme', Resistendum est inimicis nostris proponentibus nostrum regnum adnichilare.

De Supinis

Intendo ire oppositum scolaribus quos bene respondentes sum intime dilecturus. Ire: what mode? Infinitif mode. Why soo? For when ij verbus comyn togedur w^t^owte a relatif or a coniunction comyng betwene, þe later verbe shal be infinitif mode. Oppositum: what maner of spech? The furst suppin. Why soo? For when y have an Englysh of an infinitif mode suyng a verbe betokynyng bodely meuyng to any thyng to be done or to be suffirte y shall have the furst suppin, vt Vado lectum libros, Vado doctum a magistro. How mony yndyng of suppins byn þer? II. Whych ij? -Tum and -tu, as amatum, amatu. Whereby knowystow the furst suppin comyng in spech? When a worde lyke to an infinitif mode comus aftyr a verbe betokynyng bedely mevyng to any thyng to be done or to be suffrete I shall have the furst suppin, as Vado lectum libros, Vado doctum a magistro. Whereby knowystow the latter suppin? When y have a worde lyke to a participull of the presentens comyng before a verbe that betokyns bodely mevyng from any thyng to be done or to be suffrete y shall have þe latter suppin, as Venio lectu libros, Venio doctu a magistro. Vnde versus:

Post motus verbum bene ponis vtrumque supinum,
Ad loca vult primum, de vult signare secundum;
Vt Vado lectum, dormitum, siue comestum;
(fol.14^v^) Vt Venio lectu, dormitu, siue comestu.
Ast infinitum si non signat tibi motum,
Vt Cupio legere, Volo ludere, Curo docere.

And when y have an English lyke to an infinitif mode that shulde be set in the furst suppin, where þe furst suppin falyth y shall take þis nowne locus w^t^ thys preposicion ad and the futur tens of the same verbe þat the supin shuld com of w^t^ þis aduerbe vbi. Exemplum: Vado ad locum vbi addiscam gramaticam. And yf þer com a nowne betokenyng place before an English lyke to an infinitif mode þat shuld be sette in þe furst suppin, where the supin falyth y shall take þis aduerbe vbi w^t^ the futur tens of the same verbe that the suppin shulde come of, (vt) in hoc exemplo: Vado Oxoniam vbi (a)discam gramaticam. And when y have an English lyke to an infinitif mode that shulde be sette in the latyr supin, where the latter supin falyth y shall take thys nowne locus w^t^ thys preposicion a and the preterperfitens of the same verbe that the supin shuld come of w^t^ thys aduerbe vbi, ut in hoc exemplo: Veni a loco vbi addidici gramaticam. And yf þer come a nowne betokynyng place before an English lyke to an infinitif mode þat shuld be sett yn the latter suppin, where þe lattyr suppin falyth y shall take þis aduerbe vbi w^t^ the preterperfitens of the same verbe þat the supin shuld come of, vt in hoc exemplo: Veni Oxonia vbi addidici gramaticam.

Dilecturus: what maner of spech? A participull of the futur tens yndyng in -rus. Why soo? For when y have an English like to an infinitif mode betokynyng 'to do' suyng thys verbe sum, es, fui, hyt shal be sette[1] in a participull of the futur tens yndyng in -rus, vt Sum amaturus magistrum meum. And yf hyt betokyn 'to suffyr' hyt shal be sette in þe participull of the futur tens yndyng in -dus, ut Sum amandus a magistro.

---

[1] hyt shal be sette] repeated

De ablatiuo casu absoluto

Magistro docente pueri proficiunt. Magistro: what case? Ablatif case. Why soo? For when y have a reson of a nown or a pronowne and a participull (and) no word sette furth ne vndyrstond of the whych eny word of that reson may be gouernit, hyt shal be sette in the ablatif case absolute, ut (f. 115r) Sole oriente veni ad scolas; Sole occidente tempus est dissoluendi scolas; Pluuiam pluente veni ad villam. In how mony maner may the ablatif case absolute be expount? By ij. By whych ij? By dum or by cum. By dum as Me vidente tu cecidisti, id est, Dum ego vidi tu cecidisti; by cum as Augusto imperante Alexandria deuicta est, id est, Cum Augustus erat imperator Alexandria deuicta est. Vnde versus:

Per dum vel per cum sexti resolucio detur,
Huius namque rei Precianus testis habetur.
Per quia, quando, si, poterit racione resolui.

De sinodoche

Michi Roberto fracto caput medicina proficiet. Caput: what case? Þe accusatif case. Why soo? For when y have a nowne adiectif, verbe neuter or passif, or any of here participuls, gerundiuis, or supinis betokynyng all comyng in a reson before a worde þat betokyns party of þat all, hyt shal be sette in the accusatif case and be gouernit of þis figure: sinodoche. Exemplum de nomine adiectiuo: Sum albus faciem. Exemplum de verbo neutro ut Doleo caput. Exemplum de verbo passiuo ut Frangor caput. Exemplum de participio ut Sum fractus caput. Exemplum de gerundiuo: Non habeo voluntatem frangendi caput. Exemplum de supino: Vado fractum caput.

Adiectiua regunt passiuaque verbaque neutra
Accusativos, per sinodochen sibi iunctos,
Cum partis toti tribuantur proprietate(s):
Alba comas dolet Anna caput; crus frangitur illa.
Participans iunges: ut[1] Femina compta capillos,
Hijsque gerundiua coniunges atque supina.

De verbis (in)personalibus

How knowystow a verbe inpersonall? For hyt hath noþer nowmbur ne person ne nominatif case before hym, but he ys declint in þe voice of the iij person singler and comus in English w^t on of these ij synys 'hyt' or 'me'. How mony maner of verbys inpersonall byn þer? II. Whych ij? Verbys inpersonalls of the actif voice and verbys inpersonalls of the passif voice. How knowystow a verbe inpersonall of the actif voice? By my English and by my Latten. How by thyn English?[2] (fol.15^v) My English shal begyn w^t 'hyt' as 'hyt | forthynkus', 'hyt noeys', 'hyt rwes'. How by thy Latten? My Latten shall ynde in -t as penitet, tetet, miseret, pudet and piget. How shall þow fynd owte thy principall verbe inpersonall of the actif voice? Aftur the iij person singler nowmbyr of a verbe of þe actif voice, as iuuat, dilectat, penitet, oportet. How knowystow a verbe inpersonall of the passif voice? By my English and by my Latten. How by thy English? My English shal begynne w^t 'me' as 'me loues', 'me redis', 'me teches'. How by thy Latten? My Latten shall ynd in -r as amatur, legitur, docetur. A quibus verbis descendunt verba impersonalia? A verbis actiuis et a verbis neutris actiua signantibus.

Semper ab actiuis impersonale creatur,
Vel neutris (illis) quibus actio significatur.

---

[1] MS vel

[2] sha canc.

Et sciendum est quod a verbis passiuis deponentibus et communibus non discendunt impersonalia.

A deponenti communi vel pacienti
Inpersonale nomquam dicemus haberi.

What case may all the verbus impersonells of þe actif voice construe w^t? Þe datif case, owtak xiij of þe whych v may construe w^t accusatif case and genitif, and thay bene þes: penitet, tetet, miseret, pudet and piget; and v wyth þe accusatif case al only, and þai bene thes: iuuat, decet, delectat, oportet and latet; and iij w^t genitif case and ablatif, and they bene þes: interest, refert and est when þey bene sette for pertinet.

De verbis impersonalibus constructis cum genitiuo

Penitet me tui. Me: what case? Accusatif case. Why soo? For thes v verbys penitet, tedet, miseret, pudet et piget wyll construe w^t genitif case and accusatif case; w^t accusatif of þat thyng that doth the dede of þe verbe and w^t genitif case of that thyng þat the dede of þe verbe ys done fore.

Penitet et tetet, miseret, pudet et piget; ista
Accusatiuum poscunt simul et genitiuum,
Natura primum sed transicione secundum.

Libet mihi comedere. Mihi: what case? Datif case. Why soo? For all the verbys conteineit in þes versus wyll construe w^t datif case. Versus:

Hec libet atque licet, placet et liquet, accidit inde,
Congruit, euenit (et) contingit (et) expedit adde,
(fol.16^r) Pertinet, incumbit, vacat (et) cedit, quoque prestat
Cum reliquis paribus poteris coniungere ternis.

Iuuat me studium exercere. Me: what case? Þe accusatif case. Why soo? For all þe verbus contenit in these versus woll

construe w^t^ accusatif case. Versus:

Quarto iunge iuuat, decet ac dilectat, oportet,
Et latet illorum numero vult associari:
Me decet esse ducem; Monachum decet esse priorem;
Et Me delectat fore morigirum, vel oportet.
Me de velle tuo, te deque meo latet, Hugo.
Me de velle tuo latet, O pulcherima virgo.

How is iuuat declind? Iuua, iuuit, -are, -di, -do, -dum, iuuans. Why ys iuuat soo declind? For when y have a verbe to be declind personell or impersonell y shal begyne att the precentens of the indicatif mode and ioyn to the gerundyuys and þe supynys and then to þe participuls.

De declinacione huius verbi iuuat

Secundum 'Quod est impersonale actiue vocis?': verbo impersonali indicatiuo modo iuuat, preterito inperfecto iuuabat, preterito perfecto iuuit, preterito plusquamperfecto iuuerat, futuro iuuabit; inperatiuo modo iuuet, futuro iuuato; optatiuo modo vtinam iuuaret, preterito perfecto et plusquam vtinam iuuisset, futuro vtinam iuuet; coniunctiuo modo cum iuuet, preterito inperfecto cum iuuaret, preterito perfecto cum iuuerit, preterito plusquamperfecto cum iuuisset, futuro cum iuuerit; infinitiuo modo iuuare, preterito perfecto et plusquamperfecto iuuisse, futuro iutum ire. Gerundia vel participalia verba sunt hec: -di -do -dum. Vnicum participium trahitur ab hoc verbo impersonali presentis temporis, ut iuuaris.

How mony participuls longen to a verbe impersonell of the actif voice? On. Whych on? A participull of the presentens, as of thys verbe penitet comus penitens, owt-take ij impersonells the whych haue ij participuls, a present (and) a preter, as of þis verbe miserat comus miserens, and misertum, and of thys verbe

tedet comus tedens and pertesum. Vnde versus:

Tedet pertesum flectet, miseretque misertum;
Actiue vocis reliquis non attribuatur
Preteritum tale, Precianus testificatur.

(fol.16[v]) Hec est differentia inter iuuat personale et iuuat
381 impersonale. Iuuat personale est actiuum, idem est quod auxiliari, delectari; et iuuat impersonale est neutrum, et idem est quod delecta(t). Vnde versus:

Est iuuat actiuum delector et auxiliatur;[1d]
Impersonale iuuat est delectat vbique.

De Interest

Interest mea clerici iugiter studere et addicere. Mea: what case? Ablatif case. Why so? For interest, refert et est sett for pertinet woll construu w[t] genitif of all casuels
390 partes, owtake v genitius case of þj[1] pronowns principals, þat is to say mei, tui, sui, nostri and vestri, and on genitif case of a nowne, þat ys to say cuius, -a, -um, in the stud of the whych þe forsayd verbys byn construyd w[t] ablatif case, femyn gendur, singler nowmbur, saynge apon þis wyse: Mea, tua, sua, nostra and vestra and cuia interest, in the whych is vndyr-stondyd re or vtilitate for here substantiuis.

De hoc verbo impersonali obuiatur

Obuiatur mihi scolari bono socio. Obuiatur: what maner of spech? A verbe impersonell. Why ys thys Englysh made by
400 a verbe impersonell? For when y have a verbe in Englysh nevter lyke to a passif, where the passyue faylyth y shall take the verbe impersonell of such mode and such tens as the passif

---

[1] MS iij [1d] MS auxiliator

semus to be, and that þat semus to be nominatif case[1] y shall terne into such case as the verbe wull have aftur hym. Bono socio: what case? Ablatif case. Why soo? For all casuels wordis longyng to one thyng comyng fast togedur shal be sett in on case.

How shall þu say on Latten: 'The mayster betis me'? By thys verbe vapulo: Vapulo a magistro. Why soo? For when
410 y haue an English of actif significacion þat oth to be made be a verbe neuter-passif, þat worde þe whych semus to be nominatif case y shall terne into an ablatif case w^t a preposicion, or ellis into a datif case when y have þis verbe nubo, -is, as: Nubo tibi; and all þe (verbus that ben contenyd in thes uersus ben) verbus neutris-passiuis. Vnde versus:

Exulo, vapulo, veneo, fio, nubo licetque[2]
Sensum passiui sub voce gerunt aliena.

(fol.17^r) Verba neutro-passiua sunt quinque que patent per versus:

Audeo[3] cum soleo, fio cum gaudeo, fido,
420 Quinque puer numero neutropassiua tibi do.

Indicatiuo modo, tempore presenti amatur, preterito inperfecto ambatur, preterito perfecto amatum est vel fuit, preterito plusquamperfecto amatum erat vel fuerat, futuro amabitur; imperatiuo modo ametur, futuro amator; optatiuo modo vtinam amaretur, preterito perfecto et plusquamperfecto vtinam -atum esset vel fuisset, futuro vtinam amaretur; coniunctiuo modo cum amaretur, preterito inperfecto cum amaretur, preterito perfecto cum amatum sit vel fuerit, preterito plusquamperfecto cum amatum esset vel fuisset,
430 futuro cum amatum erit vel fuerit; infinitiuo modo amari;

---

[1]to þe verbe canc. [2]MS liceo [3]Exulo vapulo canc. before Audeo

preterito perfecto et plusquamperfecto -atum esse vel -atum fuisse, futuro -atum iri. Gerundia vel participalia verba sunt hec: amandi, -do, -dum, -atum, -atu. Vnicum participium trahitur ab hoc verbo impersonali ut nominatiuo hoc amatum, accusatiuo hoc -atum, ablatiuo ab hoc amato.

De temporibus formatis a preterito perfecto modi indicatiui

How mony tensys byn þer formed of the preterperfitens of the indicatif mode? VI. Whych vj? Þe preterpluperfitens of þe same mode, and þe preterperfitens and pluperfitens of þe
440 optatif mode, and þe preterperfitens and pluperfitens and þe futur tens of þe coniunctif mode, and the preterperfitens and pluperfitens of þe infinitif mode. How many turnyn I vnto E and how mony holdyn I styll? III turnyn I vnto E and iij holdyn I styll. Whych iij turnyn I vnto E? Þe preterpluperfitens of þe indicatif mode and þe preterperfitens and þe futur tens of þe coniunctif mode. As how? As legi, turne I vnto E and do þer-to a -ram and then hit ys legeram, -as, -at; legi, turne I vnto E and do þer-to a -rim and hyt hys legerim, -is, -it; legi, terne I vnto E and do þer-to a -ro and þen hyt ys
450 legero, -is, -it. Whych iij holdyn I styll? Þe preterperfitens and pluperfitens of þe optatif mode, and þe preterpluperfitens of the coniunctif mode, and þe preterperfitens and pluperfitens of the infinitif mode, as legi, do þer-to S and -sem and then hyt ys legissem; legi, do þer-to S and -se and then hyt ys legisse.

Explicit Informacio secundum Leylond. Rosa flos florum sic Leylond gramaticorum.

U. Aberystwyth, N.L.W. MS Peniarth 356B, fols.1^{r}-9^{v}

Inn how mony manerys schall þu begynne to make ⟨Laten⟩ by ryghtffull ordur of construction? By v. Wheche v? By a ⟨vo⟩catyve case, by a nominatyue case, by sumqwat sett in þe stydde of the nominatyue case, by an ablatiue case absolute, and by a uerbe impersonell. How b⟨y⟩ a vocatiue case? As 'Wyllyam[1] make þe fyre', Willelme fac ignem. How be a nominatyue case and a verbe of certen persan? As 'The maister syttis in the scole', Magister sedet in scola. How be sumwhat sett in stydde of þe nominatyue case? As 'To dyne tymele schall[2] comfe⟨rt⟩ monnus hert', Iantari tempestiue confortabit humanum cor⟨da⟩. How by an ablatyue case absolute? As 'The maister techyng in th⟨e⟩ scole, I am agayste', Magistro docente in scola ego sum perteritus. How be a uerbe impersonell? As 'Me syttis in the scole', Sedetur ⟨in scola⟩.

What scall thow do when thow hast an Englyche to mak⟨e⟩ a Laten? I schall fyrst loke owt my pri⌜n⌝cypall uerbe personell, and loke whedur hytt betokon 'to do' or 'to suffur'. And yff hytt betokon 'to do' the doer schall be the nominat⟨yue⟩ case and the sufferer seche case as the uerbe wyll haue aftyr hym. And yff my princypall uerbe pers⟨onell⟩ betokon 'to suffur', the suffurer schall be þe nominatyue ⟨case⟩ and the doer the (fol.1^{v}) ablatyue case w^{t} a prepocion, yff þer ⟨be⟩|⟨d⟩oer in the reson. And yff[3] my pry(n)cypall uerbe be a uerbe impers⟨o⟩nell, I schall begynne at hymne to make Laten and to constrew. How schall thow know, yff þer be mone uerbys in a reson, wheche ys thy prymcypall uerbe? Euermore the fyrste ys my prymcypall uerbe, but yff hyt

---

[1] -m from n [2] cow(?) canc. [3] þer b canc.

come next to a relatyue or ellys be lyke to an infenetyue mode. Whereby knowus þu when hyt comys next to a relatyue? When hyt comys next thys Englyche worde 'that' or 'the weche'. Whereby knouus þu when hytt is lyke to an infenetyue mode? When I haue thys Englyche 'to' or 'to be', as 'to love' or 'to be loved'.

'(A)[1] chirche is a place the wheche Crystyn menne bem mecull holdon to loue.' Wheche ys thy pry(n)cypall uerbe in þis reson? 'Is'. When þis uerbe sum, es, fui is thy pry(n)cypall uerbe, how schall þu knoo wheche ys thy nominatyue case? By þis Englyche worde 'Whoo or what?', as 'Whoo or what ys? The chirche is.' What case 'the chirche'? The nominatyue case. What parte of speche is 'the whech'? A nown relatyue. What hase a relatyue? An antecedent. Whereby knouus þu an antecedent? For hyt gouus before the relatyue and ys rehersytt of the relatyue. How knouus thow a relatyue? Fo hytt makys rehersyng of[2] thyngus sayd or spokyn before. What case, what gendur, what nowumbour schall the relatyue be? Seche case, seche gendur, seche nowumbour as the antecedent schulde be yff he ⟨stod⟩e þer as relatyue stoumdus and the relatyue wheyr[3] put away. ⟨Wh⟩at case schall the relatyue be when þer comys a nominatyue ⟨ca⟩se betwene þe relatyue and the uerbe?[4] (fol. 2r) Then the relatyue schall be seche case as the uerbe wy⟨ll⟩ have aftyr hym. And yf ther come no nominatyue case betwene the relatyue and þe verbe, then the relatyue schall be þe nominatyue case to þe uerbe, but yf the uerbe be a uerbe inpersonell. Then the relatyue schall be

---

[1] guide letter [2] a(?) canc. [3] a stroke canc.
[4] and the uerbe] repeated at beginning of fol. 2r.

suche case as þe uerbe inpersonell woll be construid wyth. Is that sothe all way? Ȝey, but yf the uerbe inpersonel haue hys casuell worde afftyr hym. Then the relatyue schal be suche case as the infenytyue mode wyll haue after hym. How schall thou say on Latyn þe Englysch before sayd? Ecclesia est locus quem Christiani tonentur multum diligere.

Quem: qwat gendur? The masculyn gendur? Why so? For to the nexte antecedent schal the relatyffe be referrit, byt yf the sentens lett, as in thys Latyn: Canis tuus occidit ovem meam quem ego oc⟨i⟩dam. Thys relatyue quem acordys with the fyrst antecedent and noȝt wyth the later, be enchesum of the sentens.

(I)bo[1] ad locum qui vel quod est nouum caustrum. Qwat gendur is qui vel quod? The masclyn gendur and the[2] neutur. Why so? For qwen I haue a relatyue sette betwene[3] ij nown⟨ys⟩ substantyues of dyuerse gendur,[4] hyt may acorde wyht aythyr substantyve in gendur. Vnde versus:

> Quando relatiuum generum casus variorum
> Inter se claudunt qui[5] rem spectant ad eandem,
> (Per genus hoc poterit vtrilibet assimilari):
> Est pia stirps Iesse quem Christum dicimus esse.

(fol. 2ᵛ) Vtinam essem episcopus, qui vocor Willelmus, sub spe releuandi paupertatem amicorum meorum. Episcopus: what case? The nominatyffe case. Why so? For sum, es, fui is a verbe copulatyue and wyl copul[6] (lyke) case. What maner of verbis haue strenght to cowpull lyke case? Verbys substantyves, verbes vocatyves, and uerbys hauyng (hor) strenght. How mony

---

[1] (I)- guide letter [2] no canc. [3] t canc.
[4] lo canc. [5] MS quia [6] -atyue canc.

uerbes substantyues ben þer? III. Wyche iij? Sum, fio and existo. Vnde uersus:

> Ars subst(ant)iua tria dat tantummodo[1] uerba:
> Sum simul existo, fio, nil amplius addo.

How mony verbys vocatyves bene there? V. Wyche v? Pateat per uersus:

> Quinque vocatiua[2] dicas tantummodo[1] uerba:
> Nominor, appellor, sic[3] nuncupor et voco, dicor;
> Ast adiectiua fore dicas cetera verba.

What maner of uerbys haue strenght to cowpull lyke case, outtakyn verbys substantyuis and uerbys vocatyuis? Verbys passyvys, vt Ordinor acolitus, Tenior sapiens; and uerbys as were passyuis,[4] vt Vapulo ignarus; and uerbys betokenyng strenght or mevyng of soule, vt Meditor sapiens; and uerbys þat betokenyng rest, vt Sedio tristis; and uerbys that betokening semyng, vt Aperio bonus, Emineo excelsus.

(I)stud[5] dolium est plenum vini vel vino. Vini vel -no: what case? The genetiue case and þe ablatyffe. | Why soo? (fol.3r) For all nownus adiectyuis þat betokyn (fulnes) or emtenes wyll connstrw whyt the genitiui case and þe ablatyuiffe. Vnde versus:

> Que plenum signant vel que vacuata figurant
> Iunguntur sextis, vt scribitur, et genetiuis:
> Vini vel vino duo dolia plena videto.[6]

(D)esino[7] viciorum et abstenio irarum. Irarum et viciorum: what case? The genitiui case. Why so? For thes ij verbys desino and abstenio will constrw whit the genetyffe case ex vi

---

[1] MS tantomodo [2] MS vacatiua [3] MS sit
[4] as thay were canc. [5] (I)- guide letter [6] -i- from e or c
[7] (D)- guide letter: I canc.

transicionis personalis. Vnde versus:

Desino, abstenio genitiuis iungere curo.

Dominor huius ville vel huic ville cuius incolorum, incolis vel incolas miserebor. Huius vel huic ville: what case? The genitiui and the datiue. Whi so? For dominor, -naris and miserior, misereris wyll constrw wyth the genetyue case and þe datyue[1] ex vi transicionis personalis, and[2] wyth the accusatiue ex vi transicionis. Vnde uersus:

Do dominor ternis misereri siue secundis,
Et sibi vult iungi quartum casum misereri:
Nostri vel nobis vel nos Ihesu misereri.

Ricardus et Willelmus indigent diuine gracie, diuinam graciam vel diuina gracia. Diuine gracie, diuinam graciam vel diuina gracia: what case? The genetyue case,[3] the accusatyue and the ablatyue. Why so? For theys uerbys egeo, eges and indigeo, -ges wyll constrew wyth the genetyffe case, þe accusatyue case and the ablatyue. Vnde uersus:

(fol.3^{v})

Des quartis, sextis eget, indiget et genetiuis:
Indegio rem, re, coniunge rei, mihi care,
In quem respicias. Hoc asserit ipse Papias.

Indigent: what nowumbour? The plurell now⟨m⟩bor. Why so? Fo(r) ij nominatyue case syngler wyth an et coniunccion comyng betwene wyll haue a uerbe plurell; and ij substantyuis syngler wyth an et coniunccion betwene wyll haue an adiectiue plurell; and ij antecedens syngler whyt an et coniunccion comyng betwene wyll haue a relatyue plurell.

(O)buiemus regi et regine venientibus Oxoniam qui sunt digniscimi[4] creaturarum. Regi et regine: what case? Þe

---

[1] MS accusatyue [2] the canc. [3] w canc.
[4] -i from a

datyue case. Why so? For all the uerbys þat ben contenyt in thys uersus wyll constrew w^t þe datyue case. Vnde uersus:

Obuio, parco, placet, noceo, respondio, servit,
Precipit, opponit, concludo, iunge[1] datiuis,
Supplicat, aridet, fauec, vaco,[2] proficit, herit.
Subvenit addatur, succurrit, propiciatur.
Congruo, conpacior, comfert, succedit, adulor,
Incidet, imponit, conuicior, improperabit.[3]
Suffecit, aspirat, valedico, gratulor, astat,
Imminet ac equipollet, alludit, obedit et obstat.
Occurrit,[4] sedit, restat, et quando locum dat,
Derogo,[5] condolio, preiudico, detraho, differt,
Suppetit his iungas. Que sum componit eis das.
Hec et quamplura ternis coniungere cura.

(P)ostulo[6] Deum graciam bene discendi, qui doce(o)r gramaticam. Gra(ciam):[7] what case? The accusatyue case. Why so? For all the uerbis þat ben contenyd in thys versus wyll constrew wyth a[8] dowbull accusatyue case betokenyng diuers thyng. Gramaticam: what case? The accusatiue[9] case. Why so? For all the uerbys passyuis comyng of verbes actiues the wyche ben constrwd wyth a dowbull accusatiue[10] case may be constrewed wyth a latur accusatyue case. Vnde versus:

Postulo, posco, peto, doceo, rogo, flagito, celo,
Exuo, cum vestit, monet, induo, calceo, cingo:
Accusatiuos geminos hec uerba requirunt.
Passiuis quorum postremus[11] iungitur horum.
Istis iungantur hec omnia que similantur,[12]
Que poscant, colant, ornantque rogantque magistrant.

---

[1] MS ĩnge
[2] MS vacuo
[3] MS Impropererabit
[4] Ress canc.
[5] MS derigo
[6] (P)- guide letter
[7] MS gra[maticam], with the correction not completed
[8] dol canc.
[9] a stroke canc.
[10] a stroke canc.
[11] MS pastremus
[12] MS similianatur

(U)tor rubio capicio. Capicio: qwath case? The ablatyue case. Why soo? For all the uerbys that be contenyt in[1] thys versus wyll constru wyth the ablatyue case. Vnde uersus:

Vescitur et fruitur, caret, vtitur atque potitur:
Hec ablatiuos[2] transicione regunt.
(fol.4v) Hijs iungas fvngor, et difficio sociatur.

How mony endynges of gerundyues ben there? III. Qwech iij? -Di, -do and -dum. When schall þu haue a gerundyue in -di in comyn speche? When the Englych of an infenetyue mode comys after tempus and est or ellys aftyr a nowne substan⟨tyue⟩ I schall haue a gerundyue in -di. Exemplum: 'Masse endytte, hyt ys tyme to breke our faste', Missa fenita, tempus est dyssoluendi ieiunium nostrum. I schall haue a gerundyue in -di after a nowne substantyue, as thus: 'Our Pape hasse power to assoyle Crystyn men leuyng in God of her synnys', Noster Papa habet potestatem absoluendi Christianos in Deo confidentes de peccatis suis. Qwereby knous thow a gerundyue in -doo schall come in speche? In ij maners of wyse. In wych ij? When the Englisch 'in' comys before the Englych of a par(ti)cipull of the precentens wythowt a substantyue set to hym, I shall haue a gerundyue in -do, as thus: 'In feȝtyng mony men ben wondyd and mony maymnyd and slayn', In dimicando quamplurimi[3] homines sunt uulnerati quamplurimi mutilati et quamplurimi occisi. When schall I haue a gerundyue in -do in the[4] secunde maner of wyse? When the Englysch of a participull of precent tens commys fer after a nowne substantyue, I may chose whedur I wyll haue a gerundyue or a participull of the

---

[1] uer canc. [2] MS ablatiuis [3] MS quamplurimus
[4] MS adds ij

precent tens, as 'The maister is bese in the scole in-
(fol.5r) formyng hys dysypuls, of the qwech he resayuis | yerly grete auantage', Magister est assiduus in scola informando vel informannte suos dissipulos, de quibus recipit annu(a)tim magnum emol⟨umen⟩tum. When schall I haue a gerundyue in -dum in comyn speche? In ij manerys. In wheche ij? Oþer whyle w^t ad prepocicium and oþer whyle w^towt ad prepocicion. When þe Englysch of a infenetiue mode commys after a resom and
200 tellus the cause of the resun I schall haue a gerundyue in dum w^t ad prepocicion, as: 'Men gonn to batell to feȝth w^t hor enimys', Viri vadunt ad bellum ad dim⟨i⟩candum cum suis inimicis. When schall I haue a gerundyue in -dum w^towt an ad prepocicion? When þe Englysch of an infenetyue mode comys after sum, es, fui and sum, es, fui ha⟨ue⟩ no nominatiue case before hym, I schall haue a gerundyffe w^towt ad prepocicion, as thus: 'Hyt ys to w^tstonde owr enmys purposyng to dystrye our reaume.' Resistendum est inimicis nostris proponentibus adnichilare regnum nostrum.

210 (I)ntendo[1] ire oppositum scolaribus quos bene respondentes sum intime dilecturus. Ire: what mode? Infenetyffe mode. Why so? For when ij verbis comyn togedur w^tout a relatyue or a coniunction betwene, the lattyr schall be the infenetyue mode. Oppositum: what maner of speche? The fyrst supyn. Why so? For when I haue an Englych of an infenetyue mode suyng a uerbe betokenyng bodeli mevyng to any thyng to be done or to be suffurd, I schall haue þe first supyn, as Vado lectum libros; Vado doctum a magistro. How mony endyngys of supynnys ben þer? II. Whiche ij? -Vm and -v, as amatum, -tu. When
(fol.5v) schall I haue the fyrst supyn in comyn speche? When | the

---

[1](I)- guide letter

Englyshe of an infenetyue mode comys after a verbe betokenyng bodely meuyng to any thynge to be done or to be suffur(d), I schall haue the fyrst supyn, as Vado lectum libros; Vado doctum a magistro. And iff hyt betoken bodeli meuyng from any thynge to be done or suffurt I schall haue the latyr supyn, as Vado lectu libros; Vado doctu a magistro. Vnde uersus:

Post motus uerbum bene ponis vtrumque supinum,
Ad loca vult primum, de uult signare secundum;
Vt Vado lectum, dormitum siue commestum[1]
Vt Venio lectu, dormitu siue commestu.
Ast infenitum si non signet[2] tibi motum,
Vt Cupio legere, Volo ludere, Curo docere.

(A)nd[3] also when I haue a worde like to an infenetyue mode or a participull suyng a nowne endyng in -ilis, hyt schall be set in the latur supyn. Exemplum vt Ista latinitas est difficilis compositu. And when I haue an Englyche like to an infenetyue mode that schulde be sette in þe fyrste supyn, where the supyn faylys I schall take þis nowne locus w^t^ þis prepocicion ad and the feter tens of the same uerbe þat þe supyn schulde (come) of w^t^ þis aduerbe vbi. Exemplum: Vado ad locum vbi adiscam gramaticam. And iff þer comme a nowne betokenyng place before a word lyke to an infenetiue mode that schulde be set in the fyrst supyn, where the supyn faylys I schall take þis aduerbe vbi and the feter tens of the same uerbe þat the supyn schulde come of, vt in hoc exemplo: Vado Oxoniam vbi adiscam gramaticam. And when I haue an Englyche like to an infenetyue mode that schulde be sette in the later supyn, wheyr (fol.6^r^) þe supyn faylys I schall take þis nowne locus | w^t^ þis prepocicion a and the pretyrperfytens of the same uerbe þ⟨at⟩

---

[1]Ast Infenitum si non signet tibi motum cone.

[2]MS signēt

[3](A)- guide letter

the supyn schulde comme of w^{t} thys aduerbe vbi, vt in hoc exemplo: Veny a loco vbi adidici gramaticam. And iff þer come a nowne betokenyng place before an Englyche lyke to an infe⌜ne⌝tyue mode that schulde be sette in the later supyn, where the supyn failis I schall take þis aduerbe vbi and the preterperfitens of þe[1] same uerbe þat þe supyn schulde come of, vt in hoc exemplo: Veni Oxonia vbi adidici gramaticam.

Dilecturus: what maner of speche? A participull of the futur tens endyng in -rus. Why so? For when I haue on Englyche lyke to an infenetyue mode betokenyng 'to do' suyng þis uerbe sum, es, fui hyt schall be sett in a participull in -rus, vt Sum[2] amaturus magistrum meum. And iff hyt betokon 'to suffur' hyt schall be sett in a participull of þe feter tens endyng in -dus, vt Sum amandus a magistro meo.

(M)agistro[3] docente pueri proficiunt. Magistro: what case? The ablatyue case absolute. Why so? For when I haue a resun of a nowne or a pronowne and a participull and noo worde furthe sett ne vnderstondin, of the wheche that reson may be gouerned, hyt schall be sett in þe ablatyue case absolu⟨te⟩, as thus: 'The sonne rysyng I come to[4] scole', Sole oriente veni ad scolas. Sole occidente tempus est dissduendi scolas. Plu(u)ia(m) pluente veni ad villam. In how mony manerys schall the ablatyue case absolute ⌜be⌝ expowned? In[5] ij. Wheche ij? By dum and by cum. By ⌜dum⌝ as thus: Me vidente tu secidisti, id est: Dum ego vidi tu cecidisti. By cum as: Augusto imperante Alexandria diuicta est, id est: Cum Augu⟨stus⟩ erat imperator Alexandria deuicta est. Vnde uersus:

---

[1] th canc. [2] ame(?) canc. [3] (M)- guide letter
[4] scho canc. [5] t canc.

(fol.6^{v}) Per dum vel per cum sexti resolucio detur,
Hujus[1] namque rei Precianus testis habetur.
Per quia, quando, (si), poterit racione resolui.

(M)ichi[2] Roberto fracto caput medicina proficiet.

Caput: what case? The accusatyue case. Why soo? For when I haue a nowne adiectyue, uerbe neuter, passyue, or hony of hor participuls, gerundyuis or supynnis betokenyng all, comyng in a resun before a wourde that betokenys part of that all, that worde þat betokenus parte of that all schall be set in þe accusatyue case and be gouerned be thys fegur: synodoges. Exemplum de nomine adiectiuo, vt. Sum albus faciem. Exemplvm de uerbo nevtro vt Doleo caput. Exemplum[3] de passiuo vt Frangor tebias. Exemplum[4] de gerundiuo vt. Habeo voluntatem frangendi caput. Exemplum de supino vt Vado fractum caput. Vnde uersus:

Adiectiua regunt passiuaque uerbaque neutra
Accusatiuos, per sinodochen sibi iunctos,
Cum partis toti tribuantur proprietates,
Aut e conuerso: mox hinc exempla videto.

How knous þu a uerbe inpersonell? For hyt hase nethur nowumbur ne person ne no no(m)i(n)atyue case and it declynyd in þe voyce of the iij person singler nowumbor and comys in Englyche w^{t} one of thes synis 'hyt' or 'me'. How mony manerys of uerbys inpersonellis ben þer? II. Whiche ij? Uerbis impersonellys of[5] actyue voyce and verbis impersonellis of the passiue voyce. How[6] knowis þu a uerbe impersonell of the actyue uoyce? By my Englyche and by my Laten. How by thy Englyche and how by þi Laten? My Englyche schall begynne w^{t}

---

[1] MS hugis [2] (M) guide letter [3] MS Exemplūm[] [4] MS exemplum
[5] and verbis canc. [6] illegible word canc.

'hyt', as 'hyt forthynkys', 'hyt ruis'. How by Latyn? My Laten schall emde in -t as penitet, tedet, miseret. How schall þu fymde out a uerbe impersonell of the actyue voyce? (fol.7r) After the iij person singuler | nowmbur of a uerbe of the actyue voyce, as iuuat, dilectat, oportet. How knous thow a uerbe impersonell of the passyue uoyce? By my Englyche and by my Laten. How by Englyche and how by þi Laten? When my Englyche schall begynne w^t 'me' as 'me loves', 'me redys', 'me techis'. How by þi Laten? My Laten schall emde in -r as amatur, legitur, docetur. A quibus ⌜verbis⌝ descendunt uerba impersonalia? A uerbis actiuis et a uerbis neutris actum significantibus. Vnde uersus:

Semper ab actiuis impersonale creatur,
Vel neutris illis quibus accio significatur.

Et sciendum est quod a uerbis passiuis deponentibus et commvnibus non descendunt impersonalia. Vnde uersus:

Impersonale numquam de iure creatur
A deponenti communi vel pacienti,
Aut neutris illis quibus passio[1] significatur,
Defectum cuius supplere valet aliquis, quis.

Wyth what case may all the uerbis imperson(e)llis of the actyue voyce construe? W^t the datyue case, outtakyn xiij[2] of the wheche v may construe w^t the accusatyue case, and thay bem theis: penitet, tedet, miseret, pudet and piget; and v w^t þe accusatyue case, and thay bem thes: iuuat, decet, delectat, oportet and latet; and iij w^t the genitiue case and the ablatyue, and thay bem thes: interest, refert and est when hyt ys sette for pertinet.

(P)enitet[3] me tui. Me: what case? The accusatyue case. Why? Thes v uerbys penitet, tedet, miseret, pudet and piget

---

[1] MS accio

[2] MS x[v]iij

[3] (P)- guide letter

wyll construe w^{t} the genityue case and the accusatyue case; w^{t} the accusatyue case of that thynge that dose the dede of the uerbe, and wythe the genetyue case of that thynge that the dede of the uerbe is done fore. Vnde versus:

(fol.7^{v}) 341
Penitet (et) tedet, miseret, pudet et piget: ista
Accusatiuos poscunt simul et genetiuos,
Natura primum sed transescione secundum.

Libet michi comedere. Mihi: what case? The datyue case. Whi soo? For all the uerbys that bem contende in thes uersus will construe w^{t} the datyue case. Vnde uersus:

Hec libet atque licet, placet et liquet, accidit inde,
Congruet, euenet et contingit et expedit adde,
Pertinet, incumbit, vacat et cedit, quoque prestat
Cum reliquis paribus potest associare datiuis.

350 Iuuat me studium excercere. Me: what case? The accusatiue case. Why so? For all the uerbs þat bene contenid in þes uersus wyll construu w^{t} þe accusatiue case. Vnde versus:

Quarto iunge iuuat, decet ac^{1} delectat, oportet,
Et latet illorum numero vult associari:
Me decet esse ducem; Monachum iuuat esse priorem;
Et Me delectat fore morigervm, vel oportet.
Me de uelle tuo, de teque meo latet, Hugo.
Me de velle tuo latet, O pulcherima uirgo.

How ys^{2} iuuat declynid? Iuuat, iuuit, iuuare, -di, -do,
360 -dum, iuuans. Why ys iuuat so declyned? For when I haue a uerbe to be declynyd personell or impersonell I schall begenne at the presentens of the indicatiue mode and then to^{3} the preterperfitens and then to the supynnys and then to þe partycipuls. Declina^{4} secunddum 'Quod est inpersonale actiue vocis?'.^{5} Indicatiuo modo tempore presenti iuuat, preterito

---

^{1}h- canc. ^{2}h- canc. ^{3}þe canc.
^{4}MS (d)eclina ^{5}MS voces

inperfecto iuuabat, preterito perfecto iuuit, preterito plusquamperfecto iuuerat, futuro iuuabit; inperatiuo modo iuuet, futuro iuuato; optatiuo modo vtinam iuuaret, preterito perfecto et plusquamperfecto vtinam iuuisset, futuro vtinam
(81.8r) iuuet; coniunctiuo modo cum iuuet, | preterito inperfecto cum
371 iuuaret, preterito perfecto cum iuueret,[1] preterito plusquam-perfecto[2] cum iuuisset, futuro cum iuuerit, infenetiuo modo iuuare, preterito perfecto et plusquamperfecto iuuisse, futuro caret. Vnicum participium trahatur ab hoc uerbo impers(on)ali[3] temporis tantum presentis, vt iuuans.

How mony participuls[4] longon to a uerbe impersonell of the actiue voyce? One. Wheche one? A participull of the presentens, as of thys verbe penitet commys penitens, outtakyn ij impersonels þe haue ij participuls, a precent and a preterit,
380 as of thys uerbe miseret comys miserens and misertum, and of þis uerbe tedet comys tedens and pertesum. Vnde versus:

> Tedet pertesum flectet, miseretque misertum;
> Actiue vocis reliquis non attribuatur
> Pretoritum tale, Precianus testificatur.

Hec est differentia inter iuuat personale et iuuat impersonale. Iuuat[5] personale est actiuum, et id(em) est quod auxiliari, delectari; et iuuat impersonale est neutrum, et id(em) est quod dilectat. Vnde uersus:

> Est iuuat actiuum delector et auxiliatur;[6a]
> 390 Impersonale iuuat est dilectat vbique.

Interest mea clerici iugiter adiscere et studere. Mea: what case?[6] The ablatiue case. Why so? For interest, refert

---

[1] -et from rt [2] per- from pre- [3] MS adds presentis
[4] MS par- from pre- which was not cancelled
[5] est a(?) canc. [6] case canc. [6a] MS auxiliator

and est when hyt ys sett for pertenet will constru w^{t} the genetiue case of all partis casuellys, out-taken v genetiue casus of v pronownus primatiuis, þat ys to say mei, tui, sui, nostri and uestri, and one genetiue case of a nowne, that ys to say cuius, -ia, -um, in the styd of þe whyche þe foresayd uerbs bem construid w^{t} þe ablatiue case, femynin gendur, singuler nowumbur of hor pass(ess)iuis, sayng | on thys wyse: Mea, (fol.8^{v}) tua, sua, nostra and ⟨vest⟩ra and cuia interest, in the styd of the whyche ys vndurstondon re or vtilitate for hor substantyuis.

Obuiatur michi a scolari bono socio. Obuiatur: what maner of speche? A uerbe inpersonell. Why ys thys Englych made by a uerbe impersonell? For when I haue a uerbe neuter in Englych lyke to a passiue, where the passiue faylys I schall take the uerbe impersonell of seche mode and tens as the passyue[1] samys to be, and þat as semys to be the nominatiue case[2] I schall turne onto seche case as the uerbe impersonell wyll haue after hymme. Bono socio: what case? The ablatiue case. Why soo? For all casuell[3] wordis comyng fast togeder vndur the syne of[4] a lyke case schall be sett in one case.

How schall þu say on Laten, 'The maister betes me'? By thys uerbe vapulo. Vapulo a magistro. Who so? For when I haue a Englyche of an actyfe syngnificacion þat ogh to be made be a uerbe neuter-passyue, þat as semys to be þe nominatiue case I schall turne into the ablatiue case, or els into þe datiue case when I haue thys uerbe nvbo,[5] -bis, as: Nubo tibi. And all that bem contenyd in thes uersus bem uerbys neutur-passiuis. Vnde uersus:

---

[1] -s canc. [2] sc canc. [3] -s canc.

[4] the canc. [5] -v- from o

Exulo, vapulo, veneo, fio, licet quoque nubo
Sensum passiui sub voce gerunt aliena.

Verba neutra-passiuia sunt quinque que patent per uersus:

Audeo cum soleo, fio[1] cum gaudeo, fido,
Quinque puer numero neutro-passiua tibi do.

Indicatiuo modo, in the schewyng maner, tempore presenti amatur, preterito inperfecto amabatur, preterit(o) perfecto amatum est vel fuit, | preterito plusquamperfecto amatum erat (fol.9r) vel fuerat, futuro amabitur, imperatiuo modo ametur, futuro amator; optatiuo modo vtinam amaretur, preterito perfecto et plusquamperfecto vtinam amatum esset[2] vel fuisset, futuro vtinam ametur; coniu(n)ctiuo modo cum ametur, preterito inperfecto cum amaretur, preterito perfecto cum amatum sit vel fuisset, preterito plusquamperfecto cum amatum esset vel fuisset, futuro cum amatum erit vel fuerit; infenetiuo modo amari, preterito perfecto et plusquamperfecto amatum esse vel amatum fuisse, futuro amatum iri. Gerundi(u)a vel participalia uerba sunt hec: -di, -do, -dum, -atum, -tu. Vnicum participium trahitur ab hoc uerbo impersonali vt nominatiuo hoc amatum, accusatiuo hoc amatum, ablatiuo ab hoc amato.

How mony tens bem formyd of the preterperfitens of the indicatiue mode? VI. Wheche vj? The preterpluperfitens of the same mode and the preterpluperfitens of the optatiue[3] mode, the preterperfitens, preterpluperfitens and the fvtur tens of the coniunctiue mode, and preterplvperfitens of the infenetiue mode. How mony of thes turnun[4] the I into E and how mony holden I stylle? III turnun I into E and iij holden stylle the I. Whe(che) iij turnun I in to E? The preterpluperfitens of the

---

[1] a stroke canc. [2] f canc. [3] me canc.

[4] MS Turniun

same mode, the preterperfitens and futur tens of the coniunctiue mode, as legi, turne I into E and[1] put þer-to a -ram and then hyt wyll be legeram; legi, turne I into E and put þer-to a -rym and then hyt wyll be legerim; legi, turne I into E and put þer-to a -ro and then hyt wyll be legero. Wheche iij holdyn styll the I? The preterplvperfitens of the optatiue mode, the preterplvperfitens of the coniunctiue mode, the preterplvperfitens of the infenetiue mode, as: legi, put þer-to S and -sem and then hyt wyll be legissem; legi, put þer-to S and[2] -se and then hyt wyll be legisse.

(fol.9^{v}) Explicit[3] Introduccio Puerorum, quod ⌜Wylliam Tholoyd⌝.[4] Ihesus amen.[5] Explicit quod Ihed.[6]

---

[1] t canc. [2] a stroke canc.

[3] MS adds Exp on preceding line above Introduccio

[4] written over an erased name

[5] E canc. [6] doubtful reading

V. Aberystwyth, N.L.W. MS Peniarth 356B, fols.167^{v}-168^{r}

(This incomplete version of the Informacio follows on without a break from text B.)

(fol.167^{v}) (I)n[1] how many maner shall ȝe begynne to construe and to make a Latyn by þe ryȝtfull order of construccion? In iiij. In which iiij? By þe vocatyf ȝyf hit be in þe reson, by þe nominatyf or somwhat sette in þe stede of þe nominatyf and by a verbe of certeyn person, by þe ablatyf case absolute, and by a verbe inpersonell. How by þe vocatyf case? As 'Willum make a fyre', W(i)llelme fac ignem. How by a nominatyf case and a verbe of certeyn person? As 'Ion ys hys name',[2] Iohannes est nomen eius. How by somwhat ysette in þe stede of þe nominatyf? As 'To rede and not to vnderstond is to despyce', Legere et (non) inteligere est negligere. How by þe ablatyf case absolute? As 'Þe spowse comyng a wys mady(n) redy whent w^{t} hym to þe weddyng', Weniente spcnso prude(n)s virgo preparita introiuit cum eo ad nupcias. How by a verbe inpersonell? As 'Hyt heuyethe my soule my lyf', Tedet animam meam vite me. 'In hert me belouythe to ryȝtwesnes', Corde creditur ad iusticiam. Vnde versus:

> Quatuor ecce modis construccio recta paratur:
> Quinto vel recto casu, rectore soluto,
> Impersonali, sic Condecet[3] atque parari.

What shall ȝe do when ȝe[4] haue an Englishe to make a Latyn? I (s)hall loke oute þe prinspall verbe and loke whedyr hit betokyn 'to do' or 'to suffer', and ȝyf hit betokyn 'to do' þe doer shall be nominatyf case and þe sufferar shall be suche case

---

[1](I)- guide letter [2]MS nane [3]MS condocet [4]an canc.

as þe verbe will haue after hym, and 3yf my prynspall verbe betokyn 'to suffer' þe sufferar shall be nominatyf case and þe doer shall be ablatyf w^t a preposicion 3yf þer be doer. And 3if þe prinspall verbe be a verbe inpersonell y shall
(1.168^r) begynne at hym to make | my Laten and constru. How shall 3e know, if þer be many verbys in a reson, which is þe prinspall verbe? Euermore þe fyrst ys þe prynspall verbe, but hit cum nexte after þe relatyf or be like to an infinityf mode. Whereby know 3e when hit cometh nexte after a relatyf? When hit cometh nexte after þis English word 'þat' or 'þe which'. Whereby know 3e when hit is like an infinityf mode? When y haue þis syne 'to' as 'to teche', 'to[1] rede'.

'A chyrche ys a holy place þe which Cristyn men byn meche yhold to loue.' Whiche ys þe prinspall verbe? Sum, es, fui. How shall 3e know which

(The text breaks off incomplete at this point.)

---

[1]MS -r canc.

W. Lincoln Cathedral Library, MS 88, fols. 91^{v}-95^{r} (margins)

(fol.91^{v}) (I)n[1] how mone maners shal þu begynne to make a Latyn an to construe? In foure. Qweche foure? First be a vocatif case, by a nominatif case, or sumqwat set in þo stede of a nominatif case, be an ablatif case absolute, an be a verbe inpersonil. Qwat shal þu do qwen þu hase a Englissh to make a Latyn? I shal loke to my principall verbe an loke if he betoken 'to do' or 'suffer', and if he betoken 'to do' þo doer shall be nominatif case an þo suffrer seche case as þo verbe wil haue after hym, vt Amo magistrum; and if my verbe betoken 'to suffer' þo suffrer shal be nominatif case an þo doer ablatif case with a preposicione, vt Amor a magistro; and if my principall verbe be a verbe inpersonil at hym I shal begyn to make a Latyn an to construe, vt Oportet me adiscere. Qwat shal þu do, if þu haue mone verbes in a reson, to knowe þi principal verbe? Euermore my first verbe is my principal verbe but if hit come next a relatif, vt Magister qui sedet legit, other ellis be like an infinitif mode, vt Amare magistrum est naturale.

Qwat parte of resoun is þis noun 'qweche'? A noun relatif. Qwat hase a relatif? An antecedent; ⌜and hit is taker an antecedent⌝. (Querby knowes an antecedent?) For hit gos before þo relatif and is reherset of þo relatif. Querby knowes a relatif? For hit makes rehersyngis of thing spoken of before. If þu haue mone antecedentz in a reson to qweche shal þi relatif be referret? Euermore to þo next, but if þo sentence let as in þis Latyn: Canis tuus occidit ouem meam quem ego occidam. Þis relatif quem acordes to þo

[1](I)- guide letter

ferth an not to þo later because of þo sentence. Qwat shal þu do if þi relatif be set betwen two antecedents of diuers gender longing both to one thingis? Þen hit shal acord to ayther in gender, vt Ibo ad locum qui vel quod est nouum castrum; (91.92r) and if þer come a nominatif case betwene | þo relatif an þo verbe þen þo relatif shal be sech case as þo verbe wil haue after hym, vt Video magistrum quem tu vides; and if þer come noe nominatif case betwene þo relatif an þo verbe þe þo relatif shal be nominatif case to þo verbe but if hit be a verbe inpersonil, þen þo relatif shal be sech case as þo verbe inpersonil wil haue after hym, ⌜as Cuius interest legere libros et cetera,⌝ but if he haue his casuel word after hym, for þen þo relatif shal be seche case as þo infinitif mede wil haue after hym, ⌜as Quem interest < >.⌝

Vtinam essem episcopus qui vocor Ricardus. Episcopus: qwat case? Nominatif case. Qwi so? For sum, es, fui is a verbe copulatif an wil coupell like case; and verbes substantiuis (also), as is open be versus. Versus:[1]

Ars substantiua tria dat tantummodo verba:
Sum simul existo, fio, nil amplius addo.

Qwat verbes also wil coupul like case? Verbes vocatiuus, vt Ego vocor Ricardus. Versus:

Quinque vocatiua dicas tantummodo verba:
Nominor, appellor sic nuncupor et voco, dicor.

Qwat maner verbes out-taken verbes substantiues an verbes vocatiues haue strength to coupul like case? Hit is to say þat uerbis passiues as Ordinor acolitus, verbis as hit were passiues as Vapulo ignarus, verbis betokenyng sterynk or

---

[1] in margin, as elsewhere below.

meuynk of bode or saule vt Curro velox, Meditor tacitus, an verbes betokenyngis rest vt Appareo bonus. Versus:

Elegor, experior, interpretor atque doce(t)ur,
Vado, iacet, sedeo, venio, sto, dormio, curro,
Eminet, apparet, vigilo, preparo quoque surgo.

Ricardus desinit viciorum, abstinens irarum, et indiget dolii, -lium vel -lio pleni, plenum vel -no vini vel -no et tamen dominatur huius ville et miseretur ciuitis, iconomis ibidem residentibus. Qwat case viciorum and irarum? Genitif case. Qwi so? For desino and abstineo wil construe with genitif case, vt per versus patet:

Desinit, abstineo genitiuis iungere curo.

Qwat case dolij, -lium an -lio? Genitif case, accusatif case and ablatif case. Qwi so? For egeo and indigeo wil construe with genitif case, accusatif case and ablatif case, as is knowen be versus. Versus: (fol.92v)

Des quartis, sextis eget, indiget ac genitiuis:
Indigeo rem, re, indigeo rei, michi care.

Qwat case vini vel vino? Genitif case and ablatif case. Qwy so? For vacuus an plenus betokenyng fulnes or themenes wul constru with genitif case and ablatif case, vt patet per versus:

Que plenum signant et que vacuata[1] figurant
Hec ablatiuis coniunges vel genitiuis:
Vini vel (v)no duo dolia plena videto.

Qwat case ville and iconomorum and iconomicis? Genitif case, datif case. Qwi so? For dominor, -aris an misereor, -eris wil constru with genitif case an datif case. Versus:

Do dominor ternis misereri siue secundis.

---

[1] MS vacuater

Ricardus obuiabit domino suo. Qwat case domino? Datif case. Qwy so? For obuio, -as and all his felawes contenet in þese versus wil constru with datif case. Versus:

Obuio, parco, placet, noceo, respondeo, seruit.
Precipit, opponit, concludo, iunge datiuis,
Supplicat, arridet,[1] faueo, vaco, proficit, heret.
Subuenit addatur, succurrit, propiciatur,
Congruo, conpacior, confert, succedit, adulor,
Insidit, inponit, conuicior, inproperabit.
Sufficit, expirat, maledico, regracior, exstat,
Imminet ac equipollet vel obedit et obstat.
Occurrit, restat et sedit, quando locum dat,
Derrogo, condoleo, preiudico, detraho, defert;
Suppetit hijs iungas; que sum componit eis das.
Hec et quamplura ternis coniungere cura.

Postulo te graciam qui doceor gramaticam. Qwat case graciam an gramaticam? Accusatif case. Qwi so? For all suying in versus wil constru with doubul accusatif case in þo actif voice, an with sengle in þo passif. Versus:

Postulo, posco, peto, doceo, rogo, flagito, celo,
Exuo cum vestit, monet, induo, calceo, singo:
Accusatiuos geminos hec verba requirunt,
Et cum passiuis illorum iungitur vnus.

Vtor rubio capicio. Capicio: qwat case? Ablatif case. Qwi so? For all verbes contenet in þese versus suyng wil constru with ablatif case. Versus:

Vescitur et fruitur, caret, vtitur atque potitur:
Hec ablatiuos transicione regunt.
Hijs iungo[2] fungor et deficio sociatur,
(fol.93r) Et gaudet | casum sibi sextum[3] poscit habere.

---

[1] vac canc. [2] MS iungor [3] MS silēms

Tempus est iantandi. Iantandi: qwat parte of resoun? A gerundif. How mone endyngis of gerundifes ar þer? Þre. Qweche þre? -Di, -do, -dum. Qwen shal þu (haue) a gerundif in -di? Qwen the Englissh of an infinitif mode comes aftur tempus or est or a noun substantyf I shal haue a gerundyf in -di, vt Missa fenita tempus est dissoluendi ieiunium nostrum. After a noun substantyf I shal haue a gerundyf in -di, vt Noster papa habet potestatem absoluendi Christianos in Domino confitentes. Qwen shal þu haue a gerundyf in -do? In two maners, for qwen this Englissh 'in' comes byfore a participull of the present tempus with ⌜oute⌝ a substantyf set wyth hym I shal haue a gerundyf in -do, as In dimicando multi viri sunt occisi. Þe second maner qwen 'in' before[1] a participul of the present tempus comes aftur a participull or aftur an adiectyf I may chose quether I will haue a gerundyf in -do oþer a participull of the present tempus, as þus: Magister est assiduus informando vel informans suos discipulos.

I shal haue a gerundyf in -dum in two maners, oþer quile with a preposicion quen the Englissh of an infinityf mode comes aftur a reson ande telles the cause of the reson, vt Viri tendunt ad bellum ad dimicandum cum suis inimicis, ande withoute a preposicion qwen this Englisshe of an infinityf mode comes aftur sum, es, fui ande sum, es, fui hase[2] (no) nominatyf case byfore hym; I shall haue a gerundyf in -dum, vt sic: Resistendum est inimicis nostris proponentibus ad nichilandum regnum. Qwat cases asken participull, gerundiues or suppines? Suche case as the verbes that þai comen of. Versus:

---

[1] from of

[2] a word cano.

(fol.93[v]) Omne gerundiuum | sic participansque supinum
Casus ista petunt quos sua verba regunt.

Vado visum sacrific(e)m. Visum: qwat part? A noun supin. How mone endyngis of supyns ar þer? Two. Qweche two? -V and -vm, as lectum, lectu. Qwerby shal þu know þe first supyn? Be þo Englisshe of an infinitif mode suyng a verbe betokenyng steryng to ane thing to be done, hit shal
150 be set in þo first[1] supyn, as Vado lectum Virgilium; and if hit betoken bodely mevynk fro ane think to be done hit shal be set in þo later supy(n), as Venio lectu Virgilium. Versus:

Prima supina dabit post signans ad loca verbum;
Deque loco venit: postremum pone supinum.

Qwen I haue an Englissh like to an infinitif mode þat shuld be set in þo first supin, þer the supyn fayles I schal take þis noun locus with þis preposicion ad and þe future tempus of þe verbe that þe supyn shuld come of with þis aduerbe vbi as þus: Vado ad locum vbi adiscam gramaticam;
160 other a noun betokeninge a place byfore þe infinityf mode þen thus: Vado Oxonia vbi adiscam gramaticam. Quat shal þu do if þi later suppyn fayle? I shal take þis noun locus other a noun betokening place with þis preposicion a and þis aduerbe vbi as þus: Veni a loco vbi addidici gramaticam.

Magistro docente Iohannes stat. Magistro: qwat case? Ablatif case absolute. Qwy so? For qwen I haue ⌜an Englissh of⌝ a noun or a pronoun and a participul set forth other vnderstonden⌜ an⌝ nc wort set forthe ny vnderstonden of the quech the worte of þe reson may be gouernet of, hit shall be
170 set in þe ablatif case absolute. Howe mony maners may þe

---

[1] from latter

ablatif case absolute be exponet? Be two, be cum and by dum. Be dum vt Me vidente cecidisti, id est Dum ego vidi cecidisti; be cum vt Augusto imperante Alexandrea domita est, id est Cum Augustus erit imperator.

Per cum vel per dum sexti resolucio detur,
(fol.94r) Huius namque rei Prescianus | testis habetur.

Michi Ricardo fracto caput medicina proficit. Capud: qwat case? Accusatyf case. Qwy so? For qwen I haue a noun adiectyf, verbe neutur or passif or any of hor participuls, gerundiues or suppines betokening al comynge in a resoun before a werte betokening parte of that al, that worde þat betokenesse party of þat al shal be sette in the accusatyf case and be gouernet by þis figure synodoges, vt Sum albus faciem, Doleo capud, Frangor caput, Sum fractus caput, H(ab)eo voluntatem frangendi caput, Vado fractum caput. Versus.

Adiectiua regunt passiuaque verbaque neutra
Accusatiuos, per synodochen sibi iunctos:
Alba comasque caput dolet hec, et rumpitur aurem.
Participans iunges, ut Femina compta capillos,
Atque gerundiua coniunges ymo supina.

Qwerby knowes þu a verbe impersonill? For he hase nouther nowmbur ni persoun ny no(m)i(n)atyf case, and is declinet in þe voyce of the thridde persoun, and comes in Englissh with one of these sygnes 'hit' or 'me', as 'Hit behose me to lorne', Oportet (me adiscere). 'Me redes', Legitur. How mony maners of verbes inpersonill ar there? II, that is to say one of the actyf voyce for hit endes in a T lettere as oportet, ande another of the passyf voyce for hit endes in R lettere as opponitur. Qwat case will al verbes inpersonill of the actyf voyce construe with? With datyf

case, outaken xiij of the qwech v will construe with accusatif case, and þay are knowen by versus:

Quarto iunge iuuat, decet, (qc) dilectat, oportet,
Et latet illorum numero uult associari.

And v will construe with accusatif case ande genitif case, as Penitet me tui, and tho ar knowen by versus:

(101.94v) Penitet et tedet, miseret, pudet et pyget: ista
Accusatiuos poscunt simul et genitiuos,
Natura primum sed tran(sicione) secundum.[1]

And thre, that is to say interest, refert and est set for pertinet, and þai will construe with[2] genityf case of al parte that beris case as thus: Interest Willelmi studeri, outetaken þe genityf case of v pronouns primitiues, videlicet mei, tui, sui, nostri and vestri, in the stede of the queche þese verbes will construe with ablatif case, feminine gendur ande singler nowmbur ⌜of þaire possessiues⌝ on þis wyse: Interest mea, tua, sua, nostra and vestra, in þe quech is vnderstonden for hor substanti(u)es re vel vtilitate, and þo ar knowen by versus:

Inter.[3], refert,[4] est genitiuis iungere prodest,
Sed possessiua demas pronomina quina,
Vt[5] Refert nostra dicas, Refert quoque vestra.

A verbe inpersonil is declinet in þe voyse of þe þrid person, as interest, intererat, in(ter)fuit, -rat, intererit, and on participul longyng to a verbe inpersonil of þe actyf voyse as penitens, iuuans, outaken ij, þat is to witte of miseret comes meserens and misertum, and of tedet comes tedens and pertesum est.

---

[1] (?) from sic [2] repeated [3] MS Interest [4] MS adds et
[5] MS Vtque

Tedet pertesum flectet miseretque misertum;
Actiue vocis reliquis non attribuatur
Preteritum tale, Presianus testificatur.

Obuiabatur michi a scolari bono socio. Qwat party of reson is obuiabatur? A verbe inpersonil of þe passyf voyse. Qwat shal þu do quen þu hase a verbe neutur, þe Englissh like (01.95r) a passyf, þer þe passyf fayles? I shal take a[1] | verbe inpersonil of þe passyf voyce of sech mode and sech temps as þe passyf semes to be and þat þat semes to be no(m)i(n)atyf case I shal cupil into sech case as the p(er)fit verbe will haue after him. Bono socio is ablatif case, for that þat longes to on thing comyng fast togeder shal be set in one case. By þis verbe vapulo þu shal say 'The meistur betys me', Vapulo a magistro, for qwen I haue the Englissh of an actyf sygnificacion þat ogh to be made be a verbe neutur-passyf, þat the quech semes to be a no(m)i(n)atyf case I shal turne into an ablatif case with a preposicion, or elles into a datyf case qwen I haue þis verb nubo, is: 'to be weddet', as þus: 'Hit befalles me þe mayre son to wed þi doghtur', Interest filie tue nubere filio[2] maioris. Que sunt verba neutra-passiua? Patet per versus, et sub actiua[3] voce passiuam habens significacionem.

Exulo, vapulo, veneo, fio, nubo licetque
Sensum passiui sub voce gerunt aliena.

Que su(n)t verba neutro-passiua? Dico quod illa que habent circumlocutionem in preteritis ad modum passiuorum.

Audeo cum soleo, fio cum gaudeo, fido:
Quinque, puer, numero neutro-passiua tibi do.

---

[1] repeated [2] MS filie [3] MS actiuam

Hit is to wit þat verbes inpersonil of þe passyf voyce[1]
makyn iri in þe finitif mode, as oppositum iri, 2 gerundiues
þai han and ⌜one⌝ participle, as no(minatiuo) hoc amatum,
accusatiuo hoc amatum, (ablatiuo) ab hoc amato.

---

[1] of þe þrid person as verbes inpersonill of þe actyf voice canc.

X. Oxford, Bodleian Library, MS Hatton 58, fols.46^{r}-54^{v}

(fol.46^{r}) (W)hat schalt thow doo whan thow hast an Englysch to make yn Latyn? I schall reherse myne Englysche onys, ij or iij, and loke owt my principall verbe and loke whether betoken 'to do' or 'to suffer' or 'to be'; and[1] yf he betokyn 'to do' þe doyr schall be þe nominatiff case to þe verbe and þe sufferer schall be suche case as þe verbe wyll haue after hym; and hit betoken '⟨to⟩ suffer' the sufferer schall be þe nominatiff case to þe verbe ⟨a⟩nd þe doer schall be þe ablatyff case w^{t} a preposicion. How knowest þi pryncipall verbe yf þer com moo ⌜ve(r)bs⌝[2] than on⟨e⟩ yn a reson?[3] Euermore my first verbe ys my principall uerbe but yf h⟨e⟩ com ny a relatyff or a coniunccyon or be lyke to an infinityff mode. Whereby knowest whan þi pryncipall verbe commyth ny a r⟨a⟩latyff? Euermore when þer commy⟨th⟩ any of thes English wordis 'þat', 'whom', or 'þe wheche'. Whareby knowest whann he ys lyke to an infinityff mode? Whan y haue ony of these signes 'to' or 'to be' byfore a verbe as 'to loue' ⌜or⌝ 'to be belouyd'.

Latinitas

'A cherch ys a place the wheche Cristyn men bethe[4] bound⟨en⟩ to loue.' Whyche ys þi pryncipall verbe yn thys reson? ⟨'Ys'.⟩ Whan a verbe personall ys thy principall verbe, how schall þu know hys[5] nominatyff case? By thys[6] questyon 'Wo or what?', as 'Who or whatt ys?', 'A cherche ys'. 'A

---

[1] perhaps canc.

[2] in another hand, as are most of the changes to the text

[3] yn a reson] perhaps canc. [4] moche canc. [5] t written over -y- [6] -s] perhaps canc.

cherche':[1] what case? Þe nominatiff case. Why so? For he commyth byfore þe verbe, et cetera. What hathe a relatyff? And antecedent. How knowest þu an antecedent? For hee gothe byfore þe relatyff and ys rehersed of þe relatyff. How knowest a relatyff? For he rehersit thyngis þat be spokyn of afore. When there cometh a[2] | nominatyff case (fol.46v) bytwene þe ralatyff and þe verbe, þe ralatyff schall be suche case as verbe wyll haue after hym, and yf there come noo[3] nominatiff case bytwene[4] þe ralatyff and þe verbe[5] þe relatyff schall be þe no(m)i(n)atyff case to þe verbe.

Ecclesia est locus quem Christiani multum tenentur diligere.

Quem: what gender? Þe masculyn gender. Why? For when I haue a nownn relatyff folowynge ij antecedentis of diuerse gender hauyng both reward to oone thynge, þe relatyff schall acorde w^t^ þe latter and not w^t^ þe fyrst antecedent, for to my nyxte substantyue schall myne adiectiue be bere and to myne nyxte antecedent schall my relatyff be referred, but yf the sentens lette hyt as in thys Latyn: ~~Quis~~ tuus occidit ouem meam, quem ego interficiam. This relatyff quem acordith w^t^ þe fyrst antecedent and not w^t^ þe latter bycause of þe sentens.

Ibo ad locum qui uel quod est nouum castellum. What gender ys qui uel quod? The masculyn gender or þe neuter gender. Why? For when I haue a relatyff y-sett bytwene ij antecedens of diuerse gender longyng bothe to oone thyng, þe[6] ⌜relatyfe⌝[7] may acorde w^t^ bothe[7] in gender. Vnde versus:.

---

[1] ys a place canc.

[2] Qwat ys þe rowle of þe relatyf added at foot of folio

[3] nat canc. [4] thene canc. after by- [5] personall canc.

[6] þ added above þ- [7] antecedentis indeferently canc.

Quando relatiuum generum casus variorum
Inter se claudu(n)t qui rem spectant ad eandem,
Per genus hoc poterit vtrilibet associari:
Est pia stirps Iesse quem Christum nouimus esse.

(fol.47r)

Ego sum ille qui[1] sedeo uel qui sedet. Why seyst thow qui sedeo uel ⌜qui⌝ sedet? For thys relatiff qui, que, quod commyth nexte a pronown of the iij person y-sett after a verbe substantiff, þe relatyff w^t þe verbe folowyng may be þe iij personn or suche person as þe nominatiff case before the uerbe substantyff, as Tu es ille qui sedes uell qui sedet; and wen hit folowyt nexte a nown, þe relatyff w^t þe verbe folowyng schal be oonly the iij person ⌜only⌝, as Ego sum homo qui sedet. Hec Petrus Helias.

Vtinam essem episcopus qui vocor Iohannes sub spe releuandi paupertatem amicorum meorum. Episcopus: what case? Þe nominatiff case. Why? For sum, es, fui is a verbe copulatiff and wyll copull like case.[2] What maner of verbis wyll copull like case? Knowest verbis substantiuis, verbis vocatiuis and verbis þat hathe strenkth. How many verbis substantiuis be þer? III. Wheche iij? Sum, sisto and maneo. Vnde versus:

Sum, sisto, maneo quasisubstantiua vocantur
Et que consimilem sensum r⌜e⌝tinere probantur,
Ast adiectiua tibi cetera uerba notentur.

How many verbis vocatiuis be þer? V. Wheche v? Nominor, -ris; appellor, -aris; nuncupor, -paris; vocor, -aris and dicor, -ris. Versus:

---

[1] -i from e

[2] MS adds knowest verbis

Quinque vocatiua dicas tantummodo uerba:
Nominor, appellor sic nuncupor et, voco, dicor
Et vocor: hec similes[1] semper poscunt sibi casus.

(fol.47v) What maner of verbis hath strength to copull like case
owt-take verbis substantiuys and verbis vocatiuis? Knowest
verbis passiuis, as Ordinor acolitus, Teneor sapiens; and
verbis as they were passiuis as Fio prudens, Vapulo ignarus;
and verbys þat be to keyns semyng, as Apario bonus; and
verbis betokenyng bodeli[2] strength or soffer as Curro velox;
and verbis þat betokenyng bodely rest as Sedeo tristis,
Dormio quietus; a(n)d verbis þat be(to)kenn strenght of
manys sowle as Meditor tacitus, Emineo peritus.

Dominor huius ville abstinens irarum inter seruos meos.

Huius ville: what case? Þe genitiff case.[3] Why? For
þes iij verbis dominor, -raris; miserior, -ris and abstineo,
-es wyll be construyd w^t a genityff case.

Abstineo, dominor, miserere cum genitiuo
Iunges: Abstineo panis, Miserere dolentis,
Dominor et ville bonus heres iure parentis.

Irarum: what case? The genityff case. Why? For euery
participyll, gerundife or supyn wyl be construed w^t þat same
case þat þe verbe wyll þat he comyth. Vnde versus:

Iudex quo(s)cumque serie casus imitatur,
Illos tocius verbi flexus comitatur,
Iunge gerundiua cum participante, suppina.

Ista scola est plena puerorum uel pueris. Puerorum uel
pueris: what case? Þe genityff case and þe ablatiff. Why?

---

[1] sensum retinere probantur canc. [2] meuyngge canc.
[3] þe genitiff case canc.

(fol.48r) For[1] all nownys adiectiuis betokenyng | havyng or antyng, fulnesse or antynesse, and all þe adiectiuis þat hathe þe significacion of a participull of a verbe passiue, may be construyd w^t a genityff case and a ablatyff case.

Nomen quod retinet passiuum significatum
Do genitis, sextis: poterunt exempli(fi)care
Plenus uel uacuus, (in)dignus, pauper, egenus.

Ricardus et Robartus egent gracie diuine, graciam diuinam uel gracie diuine et cetera. What case? Þe genityff case, accusatyff and the ablatyff. Why? For al verbis conteyned in þes verseys wyll be construyd w^t a genytyff, accusatyff, abla(tyff).

Des iiij^tis sextis eget, indiget, et genitiuis,
Ut noscas verum Res indigeo quoque rerum,
Indigio bobus ad rura colenda duobus.

Memento mei cum[2] tibi bene fuerit. Mei: what case?

Þe genityue case. Why? For al ⌜verbeys⌝ betokenyng mynd as recordor, foryetyng as olliuscor, presyng as laudo, blamyng as culpo wyll be construed w^t a genityffe and a[3] ablatyff.

Verbum significans obliuisci, memorari,
Quarto cum genito sextove petit sociari,
Aut accusare, reprehendere siue monere,
Necnon damnare signans uel vituperare.
Arguo te sceleris, Accuso ⌜sic⌝ leuitatis,
Accuso, dampnor bene dicitur impietatis.
Cum precij verbis tu casibus vtere sextis,
(fol.48v) Cum[4] quibus, et si uis, vti poteris genitiuis.

---

[1] euery canc. [2] from causa

[3] an added after a

[4] Interdum si sit certum precium dabo iiij^to added at top of page

Obviemus episcopo Cantuariensi. Episcopo: what case? Datyff case. Why? For these verbis þat be conteyned in þes versus wyll construe w^t a datyff case. Vnde versus:[1]

Obuio, parco, placet, noceo, respondeo, seruit,
Precipit, opponit, concludo[2], iunge datiuis,
Supplicat, aridet, faueo, vaco, proficit, erit,
Subuenit addatur, succurrit, propiciatur,
Congruit, conpacior, confert, succidit, adulor,
Incidit, imponit, co⁀n⁀uicior, improperabit,
Sufficit, asspirat, obtempero, gratulor, asstat.
Imminet, equivalet, alludet, obedit[3] et obstat,[4]
Occurit, restat, et cedit, quando locum dat,
Insidior, fido, pateo, minor et valedico.
Derogo, condoleo, preiudico, detraho, defert,
Suppetit hiis iungas, que sum componit eis das:
Hec et quamplura ternis coniungere cura.

Postulo te graciam qui docior gramaticam. Graciam: what case? Þe accusatyff case. Why so? For all verbis þat betokeneth 'to aske',[5] 'to teche', 'to pray' or 'to beseche' wyll be construyd w^t a dowbyll accusatyff þat betokeneth diuers thyngis. Gramaticam: what case? Þe accusatif case. (fol.49^r) Why? For all[6] þe passiuis | commynng of actiuis that be construyd ⌜w^t a dobyll accusatyf case ⌜and⌝ there passiuis wyll be construyd⌝ w^t þe latter of them, and suche ⌜as⌝ be ⌜in⌝ þe verse. Vnde[7] versus:

---

[1] These verses and the next have English glosses to the verbs cited, mostly in later hands.

[2] -o from it [3] -i- from e [4] over an erasure

[5] yng added after to aske [6] verbis canc.

[7] suche ⌜as⌝ be ⌜in⌝ þe uerse. Vnde] perhaps canc.

Postulo, posco, peto, doceo, rogo, flagito, celo,
Exuo cum vestit, monet, induo, calcio, cingo:
Accusatiuos geminos hec verba requirunt,
Et cum passiuis postremus iungitur horum.

Vtor rubio capicio. Capicio: what case? Ablatyff. Why so? For all verbis conteyned in these versus wyll be construyd w^t an ablatyff case. Vnde versus:

Vescitur et fruitur, caret, vtitur atque potitur:
Hec ablatiuos transsicione regunt
Hijs iungas fungor, et deficio sociatur.

Hec est deferencia inter fruor, vtor,[1] fungor, pocior, poteris uel potiris. Vnde versus:

Diuinis fruimur, exo⌜p⌝tatisque potimur,
Vtimur vtilibus, fungimur offici⌜i⌝s,
Vescimur ac estis et potu delicijsque.

Intendo ire oppositum scolaribus quos bene respondentes intime sum delecturus. Ire: what mode? The infinytyf mode. Why? For when ij verbis, et cetera. Oppositum: what part of reson? The fyrst supyn. Why? For when y haue and Englyssh of a infinityff mode commyng after a verbe, partycypull, (fol.49^v) gerundyff or supyn betokenyng mevyng or steryng | to a place where eny thynng to be do hyt schall be sett in þe fyrst supyn or gerundive in -dum, as Vado lectum vel ad legendum. And yf hit betokyn mevyng fro a place where enythyng was to be do or to be sufferyd hit schall be sett in þe latter supyn or gerundyff in -do, as Venio lectu vel a legendo. Versus:

---

[1] pocior canc.

Post motus verbum bene ponis vtrumque supinum:
Ad loca vult primum, de vult signare secundum,
Vt Vado lectum, dormitum siue comestum,
Vt Venio lectu, dormitu siue comestu.
Ast infenitum si non[1] signet tibi motum,
Vt Cupio legere, Volo ludere, Spero docere.

'I go to lerne gramer': Vado ad locum vbi discam gramaticam.[2]
Why seyst þu ad locum? For when y haue and Englyssh of þe
190 infynytyff mode that schold be sett in þe fyrst supyn where
the supyn faylyth y schall take this preposicion ad and thys
nown locum and thys aduerbe vbi and the futer tens of þe same
verbe that the supyn schold com of; exemplum vt supra. And
yf a nown propir be(to)ken place cum before and Englissch of
a infinitiff mode that schold be set in þe fyrst supyn where
the supyn faylythe y schall take this aduerbe vbi and þe futer
tens of þe same verbe ⌜þat⌝ the supyn schold come of, a⌜s⌝
Veni Cicestriam vbi discam gramaticam. And yf y haue and
Englyssch like to and infinityff mode that schold be sett in
200 latter (supyn where the supyn) faylyth y schal take this[3]
aduerbe vbi w[t] þe preterperfitens of þe same verbe that þe
(fol.50[r]) supyn | scholld come of, as Veni Oxonia vbi dedici gramaticam.
Dilecturus: what part of reson? A particypull ⌜of þe fyr(s)t
sext⌝ in -rus. Why? For when y haue and Englis of a
infinitiff mode folowyng this verbe sum, es, fui, yf hyt be
of þe actyue voyce yt schal be sett in þe participull of þe
futer tens in -rus, as Sum delecturus magistrum meum, and yf
hit be of þe passiue voyce hit schal be sett in þe participull
⌜of þe last sext⌝ in -dus, and yf þe participull fayly y schal
210 take þis relatyff qui, que, quod and þe futer tens of þe same

---

[1] -t canc. [2] vel addiscendum canc.
[3] -i- from a

verbe þat þe par(ti)cipull schold comme of. Exemplum: 'Y am to drede þe mayster', Ego sum qui timebo magistrum.

Tempus est ludendi diebus festiuis. What part of reson ludendi? The ⟨fyrst⟩[1] gerundyff.[2] Why? For when y haue and Englissch of an infinityff mod sett after a nown generall as hora, tempus, causa, propositum, desiderium et similia, hitt schall be sett most comynly in þe gerundyff in -di, as Tempus est ludendi, Veni[3] causa legendi ad vesperas, Est hora pulsandi. Diebus festiuis: what case? The ablatyff.

220 Why? For when y haue a nown betokenyng tyme, price or spase þat[4] be neither door noþer sufferer of þe verbe w^t^owt a preposicion hit schall be sett in þe ablatyff case.

Magistro docente pueri vacant dissiplinis frutuosis. Magistro: what case? Þe ablatyff case absolute. Why? For when y haue and Englyssch ⌜(of) a schurte hangyng resun⌝ of a nown and a particypull or els a[5] pronown and a participull or ellys a partycipull of a verbe inpersonall ⌜sett⌝ by hymsylfe and no word in þe reson sett owt or understonde of þe wheche he may be gouer(n)d, hyt schall be sett in þe

(fol.50^v^) ablatyff case absolute and be[6] | expownd by dum or by cum.

231 Vnde versus:

Non sine participe sextus rectore carebit:
Me duce pergatur, existente teneatur
Tunc intra clausam, Precianus testificatur.

How many[7] maner of wysis may þe ablatyff case absolute be expownd? By dum or by cum. By dum as Me vidente tu

---

[1] supyn canc. [2] and added in margin of MS

[3] i] written over y by the rubricator [4] MS yt

[5] els a] MS els from a by a later hand [6] exp canc.

[7] -y from er

cecidisti,[1] id est Dum ego video tu cecidisti. By cum vt Augusto ⌜impererator(e)⌝ Alexandria domita est, id est Cum Augustus erat imperator Alexandria[2] domita est. Vnde versus:

Per dum uel per cum sexti resolucio detur,
Huius namque rei Prēcianus testis habetur.

'What schalt þu doe when þu hast an Englysch to make in Latyn? Y schall reherse ⌜ons, ij or iij⌝' et cetera usque ad 'a preposicion'.[3] When ys thys rule trew? When my pryncypall verbe ys a verbe personall. Yff þi principall verbe ⌜be⌝ a verbe inpersonall what schalt þu do?[4] Y schall loke yf my Englyssh[5] haue eny nede of turnyng and begynne att þe verbe inpersonall. Whereby knowyst a verbe inpersonall? For hit hathe nether numburr nether person nether nominatyff case and commythe yn Englyssch w^t one of these iij signes 'hyt', 'me' or 'the'. Verbum dicitur inpersonal(e).[6] Quare? Quia non habet suppositum rectitudinis a parte ante. How many maner of verbis inpersonall be there? II. Wheche ij? A verbe inpersonall of þe actiue voyce and verbe (fol.51^r) inpersonall of þe passiue voyce. How knowyst[7] | a verbe inpersonell of þe actiue voyce? For hyt endit in[8] -t lyke þe iij person, ⌜syngler number⌝ of a uerbe actiue, vt penitet et cetera. How knowest a verbe inpersonall of þe passiue voyce? For hit endit in -r lyke þe iij person, syngler number of a verbe passiue as amatur, amabatur. Versus:[9]

---

[1] MS cecidiste [2] est(?) canc.
[3] usque ad 'a preposicion'.] canc. and then restored
[4] than ⌜I shale⌝ reherse ⌜me english⌝ canc.
[5] my Englyssh] perhaps canc. [6] -e(?) canc.
[7] MS adds verbe of [8] te canc.
[9] Semper ab actiuis impersonale creatur canc.

Impersonale fit in -t uel in -r speciale,
Exemplum detur tedet, miseret, perametur.

A quibus verbis discendunt verba inpersonalia? Dicendum quod a verbis actiuis et neutris actionem significantibus. Vnde versus:

Semper ab actiuis impersonale creatur,
Vel neutris illis quibus accio significatur.

Numquam enim des(c)endunt ⌜impersonalia⌝ a verbis passiuis,[1] deponentibus siue communibus nec a neutris passionem
170 significantibus. Vnde versus:

A deponenti, communi uel pacienti
Impersonale numquam dicetur haberi.
A neutris per que tibi passio significatur
Impersonale numquam de iure creatur.

W^t what case wyll all verbis impersonall of þe actiue voyce be construyd w^t? R(e)sponsio.: w^t a datiue case, owttake xij, of þe whech xij v wyll be construyd w^t genityff and a accusatyff[2] ⌜as⌝ penytet, tedet, miseret, pudet and piget; and iiij w^t accusatyff case onely[3] ⌜as⌝ iuuat, decet,
(fol.51^v) dilectat, oportet; and iij w^t a | genityff case and a
181 ablatyff[4] ⌜as⌝ interest, refert and est y-sett for pertinet.

Penitet ⌜me⌝ tui. Me: what case? The accusatyff case. Why? For these v verbis penitet et cetera[5] wyll be construyd w^t a genityff or and accusatyff: w^t accusatyff of þe thyng þat dothe þe dede of þe verbe and w^t a genityff of þe thyng þat þe dede of þe verbe ys do fore; and sumtyme w^t infenityff mode yn þe stede of and genytyff case, as Penitet me peccare. Vnde versus:

---

[1] siue canc. [2] and thoe ben these canc.
[3] and thoe ben thes canc. [4] and tho ben þes canc.
[5] in versibus canc.

Penitet et tedet, miseret, pudet et piget, ista
Accusatiuos poscunt simul et genetiuos,
Natura primum sed transci⌜ci⌝one secundum.

Libet michi comedere. Michi: what case? The datyff case. Why? For all verbis inpersonalis conteyned yn þes versus wyll be construyd w^t a datyff case, and all oþer of þe actyff voyce. Vnde versus:

Hec libet atque licet, placet et liquet, accidit atque
Congruit, euenit et contingit et expedit, ista
Cum reliquis paribus intersociato datiuis.

Iuuat[1] me studium excercere. Me: what case? The accusatyff case. Why? For these verbis conteyned yn þis versis wyll be construyd w^t and accusatyff case. Versus:

Quarto iunge iuuat, decet ac dilectet, oportet,
Et latet illorum numero vult associare.

How ys iuuat declined? Iuuat, iuuabat, iuuit, iuuerat, iuuabit, iuuare. Why ys iuuat so | declynyd? (fol.52r) For a verbe inpersonell of þe actiue voyce in hys declynyng schall schue the iij person of þe coniugacion þat he commyth owt of. Forma: indicatiuo modo iuuat, preterito inperfecto iuuebat, preterito perfecto iuuit, preterito plusquam⌜perfecto⌝ iuuerat, futuro i⌜u⌝uabit, et sic de ceteris modis. Vnicum participium[2] traitur ab hoc uerbo inpersonale presentis temporis tantum, ut iuuans. How many participles of a uerbes inpersonalis of þe actiue voyce? One, of þe presentens, as[3] of penitet comyth penitens, of iuuat comyth iuuans; ~~owt~~take ii verbis impersonalis the wheche hathe ij participles, one of the presentens a nother of þe[4] pretertens, as of miseret comyth

---

[1] Delyty3th added in margin opposite Iuuat. [2] trayto canc.
[3] a canc. [4] presentens canc.

(miserens) an misertum, of tedet comyth tedens an pertesum. Vnde versus:

Tedet pertesum flectet, miseretque misertum.
Actiue vocis reliquis non attribuatur
Preteritum tale, Precianus testificatur.

Hec est deferencia inter iuuat personale et iuuat inpersonale, nam iuuat personale est verbum actiuum et idem est quod auxilior, iuuat inpersonale est verbum nutrum et idem est quod dilectat. Vnde versus:

Iuuo sit actiuum cum signat vt[1a] auxiliatur,
Inpersonale signans delectat eritque.

Interest mea clerici iugitur studere. Mea: what case? The ablatyff case. Why? For interest, refert and est y-sett for pertinet[1] wyll be constrʳuyd wᵗ a genytyff case of all partys casuall, owt-take of v pronowns primatiuis, scilicet mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, instede of þe wheche þe foreseyd verbis ben construyd wᵗ an ablatyff case, femynyne (fol.52ᵛ) genᵈer, singuler number of there|possessyuis, scilicet mea, tua, sua,[2] nostra and vestra in[3] þe wheche ys understond re uel vtilitate for there[4] substantyuys.

Refert, inter. et est genetiuis iungere[5] prodest,
Et sexto proprie donant pronomina quina,
Nam Refert nostra dicas, Refert quoque vestra,
Sed possessiua demas pronomina quina.

Whyth what case wyl verbys impersonall of þe passiue voyce be construyd wᵗ? Wᵗ and ablatyff or a datyff case, as Dicitur a me uel mihi rex est Londoniis.

---

[1]MS pertineth [1a]MS et [2]and canc. [3]from to
[4]st canc. [5]MS iungers(?)

Obuiabatur ⌜mihi⌝ a scolare bono socio. Obuiabatur:[1] what part of reson? A verbe inpersonall of þe passiue voyce.[2] When y haue an Englyssch of a ⌜verbe⌝ passiue to be made by a verbe neuter where the passyffe faylyth y schall take þe verbe inpersonall of þe passyfe voyce suche mode and suche tens as þe passyfe semethe to be. Þe nominatyff case y schall turne into suche case as þe verbe wyll haue after hym. Bono socio: what case? Þe ablatyff case. Why? For whan ij wordys come togeder (in) a reson þat longith to j thyng they schall be sett both in lyke case.

How declynest þu a verbe inpersonall of þe passife voyce? Amatur, amabatur, amatum est vel fuit, amatum erat vel fuerat, amabitur, amari et cetera. Forme hym: indicatiuo modo tempore presenti[3] amatur, preterito inperfecto amabatur, preterito perfecto amatum est vel fuit, preterito plusquam-
(fol.53r) perfecto amatum erat vel fuerat, futuro | amabitur; imperatiuo modo ametur, futuro amator tu vel ille; optatiuo modo utinam amaretur, preterito perfecto et plusquamperfecto utinam amatum esset vel fuisset, futuro utinam ametur; coniunctiuo modo cum ametur, preterito inperfecto cum amaretur, preterito perfecto cum amatum sit vel fuerit, preterito plusquamperfecto cum amatum esset vel fuisset, futuro cum amatum(erit) vel fuerit; infinitiuo modo amari, preteriti perfecto et plusquamperfecto amatum esse vel amatum fuisse,[4] futuro amatum iri. Vnicum participium traitur[5] ab hoc verbo impersonali preteriti

---

[1] MS Abuiatur

[2] why ys thys englyssch made by a verbe inpersonall canc.

[3] MS adds tempore [4] -se from ce [5] -i- from y

temporis tantum, ut amatum, et declinatur nominatiuo hoc amatum, accusatiuo hoc amatum, ablatiuo ab hoc amato.

⌜Impersonali dat de se participale
Tresque habet casus, primum, quartum quoque sextum.
Ac illud numero priuatur iure secundo
Et per se positum sextum facit omne solutum.⌝

'The mayster betyth me': Vapulo a magistro. Why makyst þu in þis maner a wyse? For when y haue a Latyn to be made by any of these verbis exulo, vapulo, veneo, fio and liceo, þat þat dothe þe dede schall be sett yn þe ablatyff case w[t] a prepocicion and þat þat sufferyth schall be þe nominatyff case. Exemplum: 'The kyng schall exyle trayturis', A rege exulabunt traditores. And yf the pryncipall be a verbe inpersonall that[1] þat suffereþ schal be suche case as þe verbe wyll haue after hym. Exemplum: '⌜Hit⌝ befallyth the kyng to exyle many men', Interest a rege exulare multorum hominum. Regula habita materia componenda per aliquid istorum verborum exulo, vapulo, vene⌜o⌝, fio, nubo et licio: res agens debet poni[2] in ablatiuo casu cum preposicione, et res paciens erit nominatiui casus nisi principale verbum sit impersonale tunc enim res paciens erit talis[3] casus qualem illud verbum inpersonale exigit post se, ut Interest a rege exulare multorum hominum.

'My broþer hathe weddyd a wyfe': Fratri meo nupsit vxor. (fol.53[v]) Why ys thys made yn thys maner of wyse? For whan y haue and Englyssch to be made by thys verbe nubo, -bis, þat þat doþe þe dede of þe verbe schall be sett yn þe datyue case and þat þat sufferyth schall be þe nominatyff case, as 'Y schall wedde

---

[1] MS adds þe [2] -i from y [3] -i from e

þe meyrys dowȝter of thys towne', Mihi nubet filia maioris istius ville. And yf my principall verbe be a verbe inpersonall þat þat suffereth schall be suche case as þe verbe wyll haue after hym, as Interest vxoris nubere fratri meo. Regula habita materia componenda per hoc verbum nubo, -bis: res[1] agens[1a] ⌜ponetur in⌝ datiuo casu[2] et res paciens ⌜ponetur in⌝ nominatiuo casu[3] ⌜nisi⌝ principale verbum sit verbum impersonale, tunc res paciens[4] ⌜ponetur in⌝ tali[5] casu[5] qualem verbum inpersonale exigit post se, vt Interest uxoris nubere fratri meo.

Dedici gramaticam Eboraci et dioleticam Oxonie. Eboraci: what case? Þe genytyff case. Why? For euery proper name ⌜sympyl⌝ of towne, place or cetey sett after a verbe, participull, gerundiff or supyn betokenyng abydyng yn a place or at a place yf hyt be of þe fyrst declynson or þe second and þe syngler number hit schall be sett in þe genytyff case abuerbially, as Fui Oxonie ⌜et Eboraci⌝; and yf þe propur name be of þe iij declynson or ell þe plurell number of what declynson þat euer hyt be hit schal[6] be sett in þe ablatyff case aduerbially w[t]out a prepocicion, as Fui Londonijs ⌜et Babulone.⌝[7] But yf suche a nown propur be vndeclyned hit schall be sett in þe ablatyff case or þe genityff case yndeferently like and aduerbe, as Rex est Sarum bone ciuitatis vel bona | ciuitate.[8] (54r)

Rex vadit Londonias. Londonias: watt case? Þe[9] accusatyff case. Why so? For when I haufe a propyr

---

[1] from rex [1a] debet esse canc. [2] -s canc. [3] -s canc; Sed si canc.
[4] erit canc. [5] -s canc. [6] MS schat
[7] late addition in margin
[8] fol.54r-v is written in a second hand who was probably responsible for many of the changes to the text on the previous folios.
[9] no canc.

name of towne, cyte or plase i-sett after a partycipyll, gerundyff or supyn þat betokenethe mevynng to a plase wathesoeuer declynyson hyte be or number hyt schall be sett yn þe accusatyffe case aduerbialy w^{t}owt a preposicion, as Rex vadit Londonias.

Rex venit Londonijs. Londonijs: what case? Þe ablatyf case. Why? For when y hawe a propyr nowne of[1] tow(n)e, cyte or plas betokenyng mevyng[2] fro[3] a plas, by a place, hyt schall be set in þe ablatyffe case adverbeally w^{t}owt a preposission, as Rex venit Londonijs.

Regula: omne proprium nomen ville,[4] loci vel ciuitatis non compositum constructum cum verbo, participio, gerundiuo vel supino prime vel secunde declinacionis et singularis numeri significante moram in loco in genetiuo casu aduerbialiter posito est sumendum absque preposicione et regimine, vt Rex moratur Oxonie et Eboraci. Si enim illud[5] nomen proprium fuerit[6] terc(i)e declinacionis vel pluralis numeri[7] vel cuiuscumque declinacionis aut numeri fuerit in ablatiuo casu absque prepositione est sumendum. Secunda regula est hec: omne proprium nomen ville vel ceuitatis non compositum constructum cum verbo, participio, gerundiuo et supino significante mocionem[8] ad locum cuiuscumque[9]

---

[1] now canc. [2] for a canc. [3] a canc. [4] MS velle
[5] verbum canc. [6] fu-] extra minim in MS
[7] num-] minim short in MS [8] MS nocionem [9] d canc.

declinationis aut numeri fuerit in accusatiuo casu aduerbialiter est sumendum absque preposicione et sine regimine, ut Vado Romam. Tercia regula est hec: omne proprium nomen ville vel loce vel ciuitatis non compositum constructum cum verbo, participio, gerundiuo et supino
450 significante motionem de loco uel per locum cuiusque declinacionis[1] aut numeri fuerit in ablatiuo casu aduerbialiter est sumendum, vt Rex venit Londoniis. Que sunt illa nomina que excipiuntur ab istis regulis predictis? Nomina composita, vt Bellus Mons,[2] Mons Accutus,[3] Mons[4] Spesulanus.[5] Nomina localia sanctorum, vt Sanctus Iacobus, Sanctus Albanus. Nomina patriarum, vt Ibernia, Cansea.[6] Nomina regionum, vt Anglia, Fransea. Quomodo debent ista poni? Cum preposicionibus explicitis, vt Vado a(d) Sanctum Iacobum, Vado ad Canseam, Vado ad Franseam. Regula: propria compositis
460 nomina patriarum seu sanctorum vna cum[7] nomenibus propri(i)s[8]/ aduerbialiter non debent sed eis addende sunt preposiciones. Quot nomina appellatiua sequuntur regulas propriorum nominum? IIII^{or}: rus, domus, humus et milicia. Domo ponitur aduerbialiter et non domu quia nullum proprium nomen est quarte dedinacionis.

Expliciunt Regule Latisandi, quod Slyngysby, teste Westam.

---

[1] et canc. [2] MS mō̄s [3] mons canc.
[4] m-] extra minim in MS [5] MS spesūlanus [6] fransea canc.
[7] preposi canc. [8] addende canc.

Y. Oxford, Bodleian Library, MS Rawl. D.328, fols.8^{r}-15^{v} and 73^{v}

(fol.8^{r}) '(T)he church is a p[l]ace which Cristen men ben much holdun to luff.' Which is thi principall verbe in this reson? 'Isse'. When this verbe sum, es, fui is thi principall verbe how schalt þu witt which is thi nominatife case? By this Engligh worde 'Who or what is?' as 'The church is'. What case is 'the church'? Nominatife case. What maner of speche is 'the which'? A noun relatife. What hath a relatif? An ant(ce)edent. Whereby knowest an ancedent? For it goth afore a relatife and is rehersed of the relatif. How knowest a relatife? For it maketh mencion of a thinge seide bifore. What case, what gender, what noumber schall thi relatife be? Such case, such gender, such noumber as his ancedent scholde be if it stode ther as the relatife standith and the relatife wer put away.

Aliter sic. What case schall the relatife be when ther comys eny nominatife case bitwix the relatife and the verbe? Then schall the relatife be such case as the verbe will haue after hym; and when ther comes no nominatif case betwix the relatife and the verbe then schall the relatife be nominatife (fol.8^{v}) case to the verbe. And if the verbe | be a verbe inpersonell then the relatife schall be such case as the verbe inpersonell will haue after hym. Isse that soth allway? Ye, but if the verbe inpersonell haue his casuell wordis after hym, then schall þe relatif be such case as the infinitife mode will haue after hym.

How schall þu say in Latyn the Engligh aforeseide? Ecclesia est locus quem Christiani multum tenentur diligere. Quem: what gender? Masculyn gender. Whi so? For to my next ancedent my relatife schall be referred but if the sentence lett it, as in this Latyn: Canis tuus momordit me quem ego occidam. This relatif quem acordith w^t^ the fyrst ancedent in gender and nought w^t^ the latter bycause of the sentence.

Ibo ad locum qui vel quod est nouum castrum. What gendirs ben qui vel quod? Masculyn gendir and neuter gendir. Whi so? For when I haue a relatife sett betuen tuo nouns substa(n)tiues of diueres gendir longyng both to one thinge it may acord w^t^ either sobstantife in gendir. Versus:

Quando relatiuum gen(er)um casus variorum
Inter se claudunt qui rem spectant ad eandem,
(fol.9^r^) Per genus hoc poterit vtrilibet associari:
Est pia st(i)rps Iesse quem Cristum credimus esse.

Vtinam esse(m) episcopus qui vocor Iohannes sub spe releuandi paupertatem amicorum meorum. Episcopus: what case? Nominatife case. Whi so? For sum, es, fui is a verbe copulatife and will cuppill lyke case. What maner of verbis haue strenght to cuppill like case? Verbis substantifes and verbes vocatifes. How many verbis substantifes ben there? Thre. Which iij? Sum, fio and existo. Vnde versus:

Ars substantiua tria dic tantummodo verba:
Sum simul existo, fio, nil amplius addo.

How many verbes vocatifes ben there? V. Which v? Al þo þat ben contend in thies[1] verses:

---

[1] MS thics

Quinque vocatiua dicas tantummodo verba:
Nominor, appellor sic nuncupor et voco, dicor.

What maner of verbis haue strenght to cuppill leke case outtake verbes substantifes and verbes vocatifes? Verbes passifes: Ordinor accolitus, Teneor sapiens; and verbis as they were passifes, as Vapulo ignarus; and verbis betokynyng mevenge of body, as Curro celere;[1] and verbis þat betokyn rest, vt Sedeo tristis, or mevyn of saule, vt Meditor sapiens; and verbis that betokyn semynge, vt Apparęo[2] bonus, Imino celsus cum similibus.

(fol.9v)

Istud doleum est plenum vini vel vino vel vacuum vini vel vino. What case vini vel vino? Genitif case and ablatife case. Whi so? For all nouns adiectifes betokyning fullnes or emptynes will constrew w^t genitif case and ablatife case. Vnde versus:

Que plenum signant et que vacuata figurant
Iunguntur sextis, vt scribitur, et genitiuis.
Exemplum querens istos versus reteneto:
Vini vel vino duo dolia[3] plena videto
Dicere vel vacua vini, vinoque studeto.

Abstineo me irarum et desino viciorum. Irarum and viciorum: what case? Genitife case. Whi so? For thies tuo verbes abstineo and desino will constrew w^t genitife case, accusatif case and ablatif case. W^t a genitif case ex vi transciscionis personalis, w^t an accusatif case ex vi transciscionis, w^t an ablatif case ex vi verbi mediante prepositione.

Abstineo quartum, sextum petit et genitiuum:
A vini, vino, vinum simul abstineo me.
Desino do genitis, cum preposita quoque sextis:
Desinat irarum vel ab iris quisque suarum.

---

[1] MS celare [2] MS Appargo [3] MS dolio

(fol. 10r) Dominor huius ville vel huic ville cuius incolarum, incolis vel incolas miserebor. What case ville? Genitife case and datife case. Whi so? For dominor, -aris will constrew with genitife case and datife case ex vi transciscionis personalis. Incolarum, incholis vel incholas: what case? Genitif, datif and accusatif case. Whi so? For this verbe miserior, -reris will constrew w^t genitif and datife case ex vi transciscionis personalis and w^t accusatif case ex vi transciscionis. Vnde versus:

> Do dominor ternis misereri siue secundis,
> Et sibi vult iungi quartum casum misereri:
> Nostri vel nobis vel nos Ihesu misereri.

Ricardus et Willelmus indigent diuine gracie, diuinam graciam vel diuina gracia. What case ben gracie, graciam vel gracia? Genitife, accusatif and ablatife. Whi so? For thies ij verbes egeo, -es and indigeo, -es will constrew w^t genitife case, accusatif and ablatif. Vnde versus:

> Des quartis, sextis eget, indiget et genitiuis:
> Indigeo rem, re, coniunge rei, michi care,
> In quem respicias, hoc asseret ipse Papias.

Indigent: what noumber? Plurell noumber. Whi so? For ij nominatife case singlr with et coniunction betwene[1] will haue a verbe plurell, and ij substantifes singler w^t et coniunction bitwene will haue an adiectife plurell, and ij antecedentis singlr w^t et coniunction betwene will haue a relatife plurell. (fol. 10v)

Obuiemus regi et regine venientibus Oxonie qui sunt dignissime creaturarum. Regi et regine: what case? Datif

---

[1] -w- from e

case. Whi so? For all the verbis that ben contenyd in thies versis will gouerne after hem datife case.

Obuio, parco, placet, noceo, respondeo, seruit,
Precipit, opponit coniungimus ista datiuis,
Supplicat, arridet, faueo, vaco, proficit, heret;
Subuenit addatur, succurrit, propiciatur,
Congruo, conpacior, confert, succedit, adulor,
120 Incidit, imponit, conuicior, improperabit,[1]
Sufficit, aspirat, obtempero, gratulor, astat,
Imminet, equiualet, alludit, obedit et obstat,
Occurrit, restat et cedo, quando locum dat,
Incideor, fido, pateo, minor et valedico,
Dirogo, condoleo, preiudico, detraho, differt,
Suppetit his iungas, que sum componit eis das:
Hec et quamplura ternis coniungere cura.

Postulo Deum graciam bene viuendi qui doceor gramaticam.

(fol. 11r) Gramaticam: what case? Accusatif case. Whi so? For all the verbis that ben contenyd in thies versis þat folow
131 will gouerne after hem dowble accusatif case betokynnyng diueres thingis, and there passyves will constrew w^t the latter accusatif case by the same strenght. Vnde versus:

Postulo, posco, peto, docio, rogo, flagito, zelo,
Exuo cum vestit, monet, induo, calcio, singo:
Accusativos geminos hec verba requirunt,
Passiuis quorum coniugitur vnus eorum.
Istis[2] iungantur hec omnia que similantur,
Que poscunt, zelant, ornant (que) rogantque,[3] magistrant.

140 Vtor rubio capicio. Capicio: what case? Ablatif case. Whi so? For all the verbes that ben contenyd in thies verses folowinge will gouerne after hem ablatife case ex vi transciscionis. Vnde versus:

---

[1] MS impropiciabit [2] MS istec [3] MS regntque

Vescitur et fruitur, caret, utitur atque potitur:
Hec ablatiuos transiscione[1] regunt.
Hijs iungas fungor, et deficio sociatur.

Michi Roberto fracto capud medicina proficiet. Capud: what case? Accusatif case. Whi so? For when I haue a (fol.11v) noun adiectife, verbe neuter or passyfe or eny of / here
150 participls, gerundifes or suppyns betokynnynge all comyng in a reson bifore a worde that betokynneth partie of all it schall be sett in the accusatife case and gouernede by the strenght of this figure, synotoche. Exemplum de nomine adiectiuo: Sum albus faciem. Exemplum de verbo neutro, vt Doleo capud. Exemplum de participio, vt Sum fracturus capud. Exemplum de gerundiuo, vt Habeo voluntatem frangendi tuum capud. Vnde versus:

Accusatiuos per synotocheun sibi iunctos
Adiectiua regunt, passiua (que) verbaque neutra,
160 Cum partis[2] toti tribuantur proprietates,
Aut e conuerso. Mox hic exempla teneto:
Albus sum faciem, Doleo capud, Conputor[3] aurem.
Participans iunges, vt Femina commpta capillos;
Hijsque gerundiua coniungas, atque suppina.

How knowest a verbe inpersonell? For it hath nother noumber ne person ne nomin(a)tife case and is declined in the voice of the thrid person, singlr noumber, and comes in Ingligh w[t] one of this ij signes 'it' or 'me'. How many maner of verbes inpersonels ben ther? Two. Which ij?
170 One of the actife voice and another of the passyfe voyce. (fol.12r) How knowest a verbe inper|sonell of the actife voice? By myn E(n)gligh and by my Latyn. How by thyn Engligh? For

---

[1] -is- from -ss- [2] MS partes [3] MS oonputor

when myn Engligh begynnes w^{t} 'itt' as 'it forthink', 'it rewes', then my Latyn schall end in -t as penitet, tedet. How schalt þu fyndd oute thy verbe inpersonell of the actife voice? After the thrid person, singluer noumber of a verbe of þe actife voice, as iuuat, dilectat. How knowest a verbe inpersonell of þe passyfe voice? By myn Engligh, which schall begyn w^{t} 'me' as 'me loues', 'me teches', and my Latyn schall
180 end in -r as amatur, docetur.

A quibus verbis discendunt inpersonalia? A verbis actiuis et neutris accionem significantibus. Vnde versus:

Semper ab actiuis impersonale creatur
Vel neutris illis quibus accio significatur.

Et sciendum est quod a verbis neutris passionem significantibus nec passiuis, deponentibus et communibus non discendunt impersonalia. Versus:

A deponenti, communi vel pacienti
Impersonale numquam debemus habere.

190 W^{t} what case wyl alle verbes inpersonels of þe actyf voyce
(fol.12^{v}) constrew? Wyth datyf case, except xiij of þe | which v constrew w^{t} genitif case and accusatif case which bene thies: penitet, tedet, miseret, pudet and piget, and v w^{t} accusatif case only which ben thies: iuuat, decet, dilectat, oportet and latet; and thre w^{t} genitife case and ablatif case þe which ben thies: interest, refert and est put for pertinet wil constrew with genitif case and ablatife case.

Penitet me tui. Me: what case? Accusatif case. Why so? For thies v verbis inpersonels penitet, tedet et cetera will
200 constrew w^{t} genitif case and accusatif case; w^{t} an accusatif case of that thinge þat dose þe dede of the verbe, w^{t} a

genitif case of that þe dede of þe verbe is don fore.

Unde versus:

Penitet et tedet, miseret, pudet et piget, ista
Accusatiuos poscunt simul et genitiuos,
Natura primum sed transc(i)scione secundum.

Libet michi commedere. Michi: what case? Datif case. Whi so? For all the verbes inpersonels contenyd in thies versis will constrew w^{t} datif case.

Hoc libet atque licet, placet et liquet, accidit inde,
Congruit, euenit et contingit et expedit adde,
(fol.13^{r}) Pertinet, incumbit, vacat et cedit, quoque prestat
Cum reliquis paribus potes associare datiuis.

Iuuat me studium ex(er)cere. Me: what case? Accusatif case. Whi so? For all the verbis inpersonels contenyd in thies versis will constrew w^{t} accusatif case.

Quarto iunge iuuat, decet, dilectat, oportet,
Et latet illorum numero[1] vult associari:
Me iuuat esse ducem, Monachum iuuat esse priorem,
Me de velle tuo, te deque meo[2] latet, Hugo.

Interest mea Iohannis respondere magistro. Iohannis: what case? Genitif case. Whi so? For thies thre verbes inpersonels interest, refert and est put for pertinet will constrew w^{t} a genitife case of all[3] casuelles except v pronouns primitiffes, þat is to say mei, tui, sui, nostri and vestri, in the stede of which schall be takyn her possessiffes in the ablatife case, femynin gender and singlr noumber, þat is to say mea, tua, sua, nostra and vestra; and this noun gentile cugia; and there schall be vndirstond for her substantife re vel utilitate. Vnde versus:

---

[1]MS nunero [2]te deque meo] MS tu tere que [3]casel. canc.

Inter,[1] refert,[2] est genitiuis iungere prodest,
Et sextum proprie donant pronomina quinque,
Nam Refert nostra dicas, Refert quoque vestra.

How many endingis ben ther of gerundifes? Thre. Which iij? -Di, -do, -dum. Whereby knowest when the gerundifes in -di schall com in spech? When I haue a worde leke to an (fol.13^{v}) infinitife mode | comyng after tempus and est or after a noun substantife I schall haue a gerundife in -di. Exemplum: 'Masse endid it is time to breke our fast', Missa[3] finita
240 tempus est soluendi ieiunium nostrum. I schall haue a gerundife in -di after a noun substantife as thus:[4] 'The pope hath power to assoyle Cristen folke belevynge in Crist of her synnes', Papa habet potestatem absoluendi Christianos credentes in Deum de peccatis suis.

Whereby knowest when a gerundife in -do schall com in speche?[5] It schall com in speche in two maner of wyses. Which ij? When this Engligh 'in' cometh byfore a worde lyke to a participle of þe present tens w^{t}out a s(u)bstantife sett to hym I schall haue a gerundife in -do w^{t} this preposicion
250 in, as thus: 'In fightyng many men ben wounded, many men ben maymed and many ben slayn, In dimicando quamplurimi homines sunt mutulati, quamplurimi[6] vulnerati et quamplurimi occisi. In discendo adquiram grammaticam. Whereby knowest a gerundife in -do in the secund maner? When the Engligh of a participle of þe present tens comyth after a noun substantife I schall chese whe þ(er) I will haue a gerundife in -do or a participle of þe present tens, as thus: 'The maister is besy in the scole informyng his discipuls', Magister est assiduus[7] in

---

[1]MS interest [2]MS adds et [3]MS Misse [4]Teh canc.
[5]MS place [6]MS quamphurimi [7]MS assidiuis

scola informando vel informans suos discipulos.

When schall I haue a gerundif in -dum? A gerundife in -dum may come in speche in ij maner wise. In which ij maner? W^{t} ad preposicion and (w^{t})oute ad preposicion. When schall (fol.14^{r}) I haue a gerundife in -dum w^{t} ad preposicion? | When an Engligh of an infinitife modo comes in a resun and tellys the cause of the reson I schall haue a gerundife in -dum w^{t} ad preposicion, as thus: 'Men gone to batayle to fight w^{t} here enmys', Viri vadunt ad bellum ad dimicandum cum inimicis suis. When schall I haue a gerundif in -dum w^{t}oute ad preposicion? When þe Engligh of an infinitife mode comes after sum, es, fui and sum, es, fui haue no nominatife case byfore hym I schall haue a gerundife in -dum w^{t}oute ad preposicion, as thus: 'It is to w^{t}stonde oure enmys preposyng to distrye oure reume', Resistendum est inimicis nostris proponentibus distruere regnum nostrum.

Intendo ire oppositum scolaribus meis quos bene respondentes sum imtime dilecturus. Ire: what mode? Infinitife mode. Why so? For when ij verbes come togeder w^{t}oute a coniunction or a relatife betuen hem þe latter schall be infinitife mode. Oppositum: what maner[1] of spech? Þe first suppyn. Whi so? For whan I haue a worde leke to an infinitife mode or to a participle of þe future tens folowyng a verbe that betokynneth bodely mefynge to a place I schall haue þe first suppyn, as Vado lectum libros, Vado[2] doctum a magistro.

How many endingis ben there of suppyns? II. Which ij? Tum and -tu, as amatum, amatu.[3] Whereby knowest þe latter

---

[1]MS marier [2]MS vatum [3]MS amatum

suppyn? When I haue a verbe lyke to a participle of the present tens/or of þe preterit w^{t} þe signe of a preposicion byfore hym after verbe or participle betokynnyng mevynge fro eny thinge done I schall haue the latter suppyn. Vnde versus:

(fol.14^{v}) 291

Post motus verbum bene pones utrumque suppinum:
Ad loca vult primum, de vult signare secundum,
Vt Vado lectum, dormitum siue comm⌜e⌝stum,
Vt Venio lectu, dormitu siue comm⌜e⌝stu.
Ast infinitum si[1] non signet tibi motum,
Vt Cupio legere, Volo ludere, Curo docere.

Magistro docente pueri proficiunt. Magistro: what case? Ablatife case absolute. Whi so? For when I haue a noun, a pronoun or a participle in a schort hangyng reson and no worde sett afore ne vndirstand that they may be gouerned of it schall
300 be sett in þe ablatyfe case absolute. Exemplum: 'One latyn taught another is to be taught', Vna latinitate docta alia est docenda, or elles thus: 'The sonn rysyng I come to scole', Sole oriente veni scolas. How many maners may the ablatife case absolute be expounde? By two. Which ij? By dum and by cum; (by dum) as thus: Ille vidente tu cecidisti, (id est Dum ille vidit tu cecidisti); by cum, as Augusto imperatore Alixandria deuicta (est), id est Cum[2] Augustus erat imperator Alixandria erat devicta. Vnde versus:

Per dum vel per cum sexti resolucio detur,
310 Huius namque rei Precianus testis habetur.

How knowest a verbe inpersonell? For it hath nether noumber ne person ne nominatife case and is declinedem in þe voice of þe thrid person, singlr noumber, and comyth in Engligh w^{t} one of thies ij signes 'it' or 'me'. How many maner of verbes impersonels ben there? II. Which two? One of þe

---

[1] on canc. [2] MS dum

actife voice and another of the passyfe voice. How knowest
(fol.15^{r}) a verbe in|personell of the actife voice? By myn Engligh
and by my Latyn. How by thyn Engligh? For myn Engligh
schall begynne w^{t} 'itt' as 'it forthinketh', 'it reweth',
and my Latyn schall endem in -t as penitet, tedet. How
schall thow fynde oute thy verbe inpersonell of the actife
voice? After the thrid person, singlr noumber of a verbe
of the actife voice, as iuuat, dilectat, oportet. How
knowest a verbe inpersonell of the passife voice? By myn[1]
Engligh and by my (Latyn). How by thyn Engligh? For myn
Engligh schall begyn w^{t} 'me' as 'me louys', 'me redis', 'me
techis'. How by thy Latyn? For my Latyn schall ende in
-r as amatur, legitur, docetur.

A quibus verbis discendunt inpersonalia? A verbis
actiuis et a verbis neutris accionem[2] significantibus.
Vnde versus:

Semper ab actiuis inpersonale creatur
Vel neutris illis quibus accio significantur.

Et sciendum est quod a verbis passiuis deponentibus et
comunibus non discendunt inpersonalia, nec a verbis neutris
passionem significantibus. Vnde versus:

A deponenti, communi vel pacienti
Inpersonale nunquam debemus habere.

How is this verbe inpersonell iuuat declined? Verbo
inpersonali, indicatiuo modo iuuat, preterito inperfecto
iuuabat, preterito perfecto iuu(i)t, preterito plusquamperfecto
iuuerat, futuro iuuabit; imperatiuo modo iuuet; optatiuo
modo utinam iuuaret, preterito perfecto et plusquamperfecto

---

[1] MS nyn [2] MS occionem

utinam iuuisset, futuro vtinam iuuet; coniunctiuo modo cum
(fol.15^{v}) iuuet, | preterito inperfecto cum iuuaret, preterito perfecto cum iuueret, preterito plusquamperfecto cum iuuisset, futuro cum iuuerit; infinitiuo modo iuuare, preterito perfecto et plusquamperfecto iuuisse, futuro caret. Vnicum participium trahitur[1] ab hoc verbo inpersonali[2] vt iuuans.

350 Que est differencia inter iuuat personale et iuuat inpersonale? Dico quod iuuat personale est actiuum et idem est quod auxiliari, dilectari, et iuuat inpersonale est neutrum et idem est quod dilectat. Vnde versus:

Est iuuat actiuum dilectat et auxiliatur,
Inpersonale iuuat est dilectat ubique. |

(The rest of fol.15^{v} is taken up with miscellaneous notes in Latin in a second hand. The following paragraphs on fol.73^{v} are in the second hand and may be seen as completing the text.)

(fol.73^{v}) Nota[3] quod hoc verbum decet semper est impersonale nisi quando adiungi vel supposito ornamentum corporis signanti, vnde incongrue dicitur Ego deceo[4] togam tolarem, sed congrue dicitur Me decet[5] toga talaris.

360 Interest mea clerici[6] iugiter studere. Mea ys the ablatiue case for these iij verbis interest, refert and est y-sett for (per)tinet wyl construe w^{t} a genetif case off all casuell wordys owte take the v pronownys primitiuis, scilicet mei, tui, sui, nostri and vestri, in the stede of whom they wyll be construyd w^{t} an ablatiue case, femynyn gender and singuler number of ther possatiuis, as in thys whys: Interest

---

[1] MS trahrtur [2] MS Inpersonalia [3] MS Nata
[4] MS doceo [5] MS docet [6] -i from a

mea, tua, sua, nostra et vestra, in the whych ys wnderstonde a genitif case of ther primatiuis, scilicet mei, tui, sui, nostri and vestri and these nownys re or vtilitate for ther substantiuis, and thys nowne cuius, -a, -um folowyth the samme rulle.

Vj tens byth furmyd of the pretertens only of the indicatif mod, of the whych vj iij changeth I into E, the whych byn these: the preterplusquamperfectens[1] only of the indycatyf mode, þe preter(per)fectens and futur tens off the coniunctiue mode; and iij kepyth I styll þe whych ben these: the preterplusquamperfectens of þe optatiue mode, and þe preterplusquamperfectens of con(iunc)tiue mode, and þe preterplusquamperfectens of infinitiue mode vt amauissem, -se, -ram, -ri(m), -ro.

-Ram, -rim, -ro mutant I, -sem, -sem, -se retinent I.

Explicit totum.

---

[1] and canc.

Z. Cambridge, Corpus Christi College MS 233, fols.164^{r}-169^{v}

fol.164^{r}) (F)ormula gramaticis hec copulata nouellis
Pr(i)ncipium facile[1] congruitatis habet.

Ego sum[2] creatura Dei. Þes verbe sum is þe singular number and þe frist persone. Whi so? For euery verbe schale acorde w^{t} þe nominatif case in ij. Whyche ij? Number and person.

Verbum supposito dic concordare duobus,
Persona,[3] numero; sic tradit regula nobis.

Promus et pinserna debent aulam mundare. Þis verbe debent is þe plurell number. Why so? For ij nominatif casus ⌜singuler⌝ w^{t} an et coniuncion ⌜copulatife⌝ comyng betwene wyl haue a verbe plurell.

Dant tibi plurale verbum iunctum duo recti.

Pater meus et non mater mea est mortuus. Þis verbe est is þe singular number for[4] when I haue a[5] copulatife w^{t} a negatife comyng betwene þe nominatife case and þe verbe, þe adiectif scale acord w^{t}[6] þe first as it is shewid afore.

Si rectos binos tibi copula consosiabit
Affirmatiue, verbum plurale meabit.
Sique negatiue coniuncio consosietur
Verbum singulare tibi tunc de iure tenetur.

---

[1] s canc. [2] creature D canc. [3] MS persono
[4] ij nominatif casus singular w^{t} a nom canc.
[5] negatife canc. [6] er canc. after w-

Bonus vir amat Deum[1] super omnia. Þis adiectif[2] bonus is þe singular number and þe nominatif case, maculin gender, for so is þe substantif vir, and euery adiectife schal (acord) w^t^ þe substantif[3] in iij: case, gender and number.

Cum substantiuo tribus adiectiua[4] locabis,
In casu, genere, numero simull assosiabis.

(fol.164^v^) Bonum est multum audire et modicum dicere. Þe adiectif bonum is þe neuter gender substantifly, for when I haue a adiectife i-set in a reson w^t^owt a substantif hit shal be in þe neuter substantiuely.

Mobile prolatum preter fixum sibi certum
In neutro genere fixe solet esse repertum.

Magister et ostiarius sunt assidui in scola. Þis adiectif assidui is þe plurell number for ij substantif singular w^t^ an et coniunciun copulatife comyng betwen wil haue a adiectif plurel.

Substantiua duo si singula sint tibi iuncta,
Tunc adiecti⁀u⁀um semper plurale requirunt.

Puer qui[5] iugiter laborat cito addiscit gramaticam. Þis relatif qui is þe masculyn gender and þe singular number and þe iij person, for so is þe antesedent puer, for euery relatife schal acorde w^t^ þe antecedent in gender, number and person.

Antecedente tribus hijs coniunge relatum,
Persona, numero, sit genus atque datum.

Ioh(ann)es et Robertus qui bene addiscent a magistro diligentur. Þis relatife qui is þe plurell number, for ij anticedens singular[6] w^t^ an et coniuncioun ⌜copulatif⌝ comyng betwen[7] wil haue a relatif plurel.

Post duo nomina singula des plurale relatum.

---

[1] se canc. [2] MS adiectis [3] -is canc.
[4] MS adiectiuo [5] -i from e [6] et canc.
[7] te canc. after be-

Socius meus quem magister verberat est valde insolens.

Þis relatif quem is þe accusatife case, for when þer comyth a nominatife case betwen þe relatife and verbe[1] þe relatife schal be such case as þe verbe wil haue after him, and þer be non nominatif case betwen þe relatif and þe verbe þe relatif schall be nominatif case to þe verbe.

Si rectus mediat inter verbum et relatum[2] |
(fol.165[r]) Casu quem post se vult verbum pone relatum;
Si nil sit medium tunc recto pone relatum.

Pater meus est vna creaturarum Dei. Þis nown partitif[3] vna is þe femyn gender, for euery nown partitif and distributitife schal acorde in gender (w^t) þe genitif case þat folowit plurell number and yf þey be of on significacion, and he schal acorde in case w^t þe substantif þat goith afore.

Concordans genere fore plurale genitiuo
Vult par(ti)tiuum semper, velud vna sororum.
Est vnus florum rosa dicat quisque virorum.

Deus est optima rerum. Þis superlatif degre optima is þe femyn gender, for euery superlatife degre schal acorde (in gender) w^t þe genitif case plurel number and yf þe be of on kynde, and w^t þe[4] substantife set before in case and number; and yf þi be not of on kynde þe superlatif degre schal acorde in case, gender and number w^t þe substantife before, as Iohannes est stultissimus aucarum vel inter aucas.

Omne superlatum partitiue recitatum[5]
Semper vult genere genitiuis par retinere,
Vt pateat verum sic: Est Deus optima rerum.
Immo superlatum propria vi quando negatur
Per genus hoc fixo[6] precedenti similatur.

---

[1] MS adds and þerfor
[2] MS relatiuum
[3] -it- from -if-
[4] w^t þe] repeated
[5] MS resuscitatum
[6] MS fixum

Vinum est forcior potus quam seruisia et magis tenuis.

Þis ij wordys magis tenuis be set in þe sted of þe comparatife degre of þis nown hic, hec tenuis[1] et hoc tenue, (f)or euery nown of þe positife degre hauuyng a vowel afore -vs as | pius, and afore -is as tenuis lackyth þe compartife degre, wherof is tak of þe positif degre w^t þis adverbe magis.

(1.165^v)

Que per -ius[2] vel -eus,[3] -vis aut -v(u)s -or caruere,
Per magis et primum quod comparat instituere.

Manus mea est magna cum manus fratris mei est maior.

These five nownis bonus, -a, -um; malus, -a, -um; paruus, -a, -um; multus, -a, -um; magnus, -a, -um formyth þe comparatif degre and þe superlatife owt of rewlle, and þerfor we sey magnus, maior, maximus.

Res bona, res melior, res optima; res mala, peior,
Pessima; res magna, res maior, maxima rerum;
Parua, minor, minema dic; multis, plurimus addes.
Plur(i)mus et multis sic comparat abque secundo.

Soror mea est pulcherima creaturarum.[4] Þis superlatif deg⌜r⌝e pulcerima is formyd of þe nominatif case singular number,[5] for when my nown of positif degre endyth in R letter þe superlatif degre schal be formyd of þe nominatif case be puttyng to a -rimus, as pulcher, pulcerimus, ow~~t~~tak þes in þis verse.

Cum rectus tenet -r poteris -rimus addere semper;
Nuperus atque vetus, maturus[6] detero iunges.
In -rimus atque -timus dexterve sinister habetur,
Et memor excipitur,[7] memorissimus hunc reperitur.

---

[1] vel canc. [2] i- from e [3] MS [e]us
[4] MS creaturaturum [5] fur canc. [6] MS maturis
[7] MS accipitur

Ricardus est humilimus omnium sociorum meorum. Þis superlatif degre humilimus ys formid owt of rewll, and þes v nownis agilis, gracilis, facilis and similis and humilis, þe wich v be formyde of þe nominatif case be puttyng awey -is and set þerto a -limus, as agilis, put awey -is and put þerto a -limus and þ[en] it wol be agillimus. |

(fol.166[r])

Dant tibi quinque -limus que signant nomina f-a-g-u-s;
Hec agilis, gracilis, humilis, facilis, similisque
Et sua composita, que duplice (sunt) L habenda.

Socie mi doce me regulas meas. Thys word mi is þe vocatif case of meus, -a, -um. How many pronowns[1] conteynyth þe vocatif case? IIII. Wich iiij? Tu, meus, noster and[2] nostras.

Quatuor exceptis pronomina nulla vocabis;
Tu, meus, et noster[3] nostras: hec sola vocantur.

Ego et frater meus ibimus[4] iantatum. Þis verbe ibimus ys þe frist persone for þe frist person is more worþer þan þe secunde and þe thyrd.

Prima duas alias recipit sed non vici versa:
Tu fraterque datis vt honore suscipiatis.

Iohannes lesit socium suum pro quo a magistro vapulabit. Þis word Iohannes is þe iij person, for euery nown and euery pronown and euery participul is þe iij person, owtak ego, nos, tu, vos w[t] þer oblyks and euery vocatif case.

Terne persone generaliter omnis habetur
Rectus, sed demas pronomina iiij[or] inde,
Sunt ego, nos prime, tu, vos quoque nempe secunde.

---

[1]MS adds ys [2]vester canc. [3]et noster] MS noster et
[4]ua canc.

Frater meus et soror mea sunt assidui in domo patris mei. Þis adiectif assidui is þe maculyn gender, for þe maculyn gender ys more wortheer þan þe femen and þe neuter ys more worthyer þan þe maculyn or þe femyn.

Mas. sibi femenium, sed fe. non consipit vllum;
Neutrum fe. sibi mas. si bene consipias.

Istud dolium est plenum vini vel vino.[1] What case? Þe genitife case and þe ablatyfe, for euery nown þat betokenyth fulnes or emtynese wil construu w^t a genitif case and ablatife case. |

(fol.166^v)

Que plenum signant vel que vacuata figurant,
Hec ablatiuis poteris dare vel genitiuis:
Vini vel vino duo dolia plena videto.

Obuiemus regi et regine. Þis word regi is þe datyf case, for al þes verbis þat be conteynyde in þis verse wil construu w^(t) a datif case.

Obuio, parco, placet, noceo, respondeo, seruet,
Presipit, opponit coniungimus iste datiuis,
Supp(l)icat, intersum, fauet, heret(et)/inuidet, illis
Subuenit addatur, succurrit,[2] propiciatur.

Vtor rubio capicio. Capicio,[3] what case? Þe ablatif case, for al þes verbes þat be conteynyde in þis wil construu w^t a ablatif case.

Vescitur et fruitur, caret, vtitur atque potitur:
Hec ablatiuos transicione regunt.
Fungor iungatur, et dificio sociatur.

Dominor huius ville abstinens irarum. Huius ville, what case? Þe genitiui case, for al þe verbys þat be conteynyd in þis versis wil construu w^t a genitiui case.

---

[1] waht canc. [2] pp canc. [3] MS capicis

Abstineo, dominor, misereris cum genitiuis
Iunges: Abstineo panis; Miserere dolentis;
Dominor et wille bonus heres[1a] iure parentis.

Irarum, what case? Þe genitiui case. Why so? For euery participul, gerundif and suppyn wyl constru w^t^ sich case as þe verbe þat he comyth of.

Iudex quoscumque serie casus imitatur,
Illos tocius verbi flexus comitatur.[1]
170 Iunge gerundiua cum parti(ci)pante, supina.

Ricardus et Robertus indigent diuine gracie vel diuina gracia. What case diuine gracie vel diuina gracia? Þe genitiui and þe ablatife. Why so? For all þes verbis wil constru w^t^ a genitiui case and a ablatif case.

(fol.167^r^) Des ablatiuis eget, indiget ac genitiuis,
Vt noscas verum sic: Indigeo quoque rerum;
Indigeo bobus ad rura colenda duobus.

Postulo te graciam[2] qui doceor g⌜r⌝amaticam. Graciam, what case? Þe accusatif case, for all þes verbis þat be
180 conteynyde in[3] þes versis wil constru w^t^ a dobil accusatif case, and þe passyuis of þem wyll constru w^t^ on accusatif case.

Postulo, posco, peto, doceo, rogo, flagito, celo,
Exuo cum vestit, monet, induo, calceo, singo:
Accusatiuos geminos hec verba requirunt,
Et cum passiuis postremus iungitur illi.

How many endyngis of gerundiuis ben þer? III. Whych iij? -Di, -do and -dum. When schal I haue a gerundife in -di in comyn spech? When þe Englich of a infinitif mode comyng after eny of þes nowns tempus, causa, desiderium, voluntas et
190 sich oþer lyk, or after a nown substantife. Exemplum: Missa

---

[1]MS comutatur [1a]MS adds de [2]MS gramaticam [3]in canc.

finita tempus est soluendi[1] ieiunium. Item: Papa habet potestatem so(l)uendi Christianos.

When schal I haue a gerundiue in -do in comen spech? In ij maner of wys. On ys when þis Englich 'in' cometh byfore þe Englich of a partisipul of þe presentens w^t owt a substantife to hym, þan schal I haue a gerundiue in -do ⌜w^t thys preposicion in⌝. Exemplum: In dimicando multi homines sunt vulnerati. The secunde maner ys when þe Englich of a participul of þe presentens comyng after a substantif, þan I maye chese wheþer þat I wolle haue a participull of þe presentens or a gerundyue in -do. Exemplum: Magister est assiduus in scola informando vel informans suos scolares.

(fol.167^v) When schall I haue a gerundiue in -dum? In to maner of whyse. The furst maner of whyse is (when) I haue a Englich[2] of a infinitif mode þat comyth after a resen and tellyth þe cause of þe reson, þan schal I haue a gerundif in -dum w^t a preposicion ⌜ad⌝. Exemplum:[3] Viri vadunt ad bellum ad dimicandum. The secunde maner of[4] wyse is when I haue a Englich of a infinitife mode comyng after þis verbe sum, es, fui w^t owt eny nominatif case to hym, þen schal I haue a gerundif in -dum w^t owt a prepos(ic)ion. Exemplum: Resistendum est inimicis[5] nostris pugnantibus contra[6] nos.

Intendo ire oppositum scolaribus. Þis word oppositum is þe frist suppyn, for when I haue a Englich of a infinitif mode comyng after a verbe betokenyng to a place eny þyng to be don it schall be set in in þe first suppyn. Venio lectu libros. Þis word lectu is þe latur suppyn, for when I haue an Englich[7]

---

[1] MS fouendi [2] n- canc. [3] vin canc.
[4] wh canc. [5] MS inimicis from inimicis
[6] MS con⟨ ⟩ constra [7] an Englich] MS a nenglich

of infinitife comyng after a verbe betokenyng meuyng fro a place it schal be sett in þe later suppyn.

Post motus verbum primum coniunge supinum,
Vt Vado lectum[1], senatum siue comestum;
Deque loco[2] signans postremum iunge[3] suppinum;
Infinitiuum si non signet tibi motum;
Vt Venio lectu, senatu siue[4] comestu,
Vt Cupio legere, Volo ludere, Curo docere.

And when I haue a Englich of a infinitif mode þat schuld be
(1.168r) set in þe[5] f(i)rst supyn, where þe supyn / faylyth I schal take þis nown locus w^t þis preposicion ad and þat futur tens of þe same verbe þat þe suppyn sch⌜u⌝ld cum of w^t þis aduerbe vbi.[6] Exemplum: Vado[7] ad locum vbi addiscam gramaticam. And when þe Englisch of þe infinitife mode þat scul be set in þe later supyn comyng in a reson, where þe supyn fallyth I schal take þis nown locus w^t þis preposicion a and þe pretertens of þe same verbe þat þe suppyn schuld cum of w^t þis aduerbe vbi. Exemplum: Veni a loco vbi addiscam gramaticam. And yf þer[8] comyth a propar name of a place I schal haue þe propar name w^t þis aduerbe vbi and þe pretertens. Exemplum: Veni Exonia vbi addidici gramaticam.

Ego sum dilecturus socium. Þis worde dilecturus ys a participul of þe futur tens in -rus, for when I[9] haue a Englich lik to a infinitife betokenyng 'to do' followyng þis verbe sum, es, fui it schal be set in[10] a participul of þe futur tens in -rus, as Ego sum amaturus; and yf þe Englich of þe infinitife

---

[1] repeated
[2] MS loca
[3] MS iungitur
[4] cup canc.
[5] finitife canc.
[6] -i from e
[7] MS vodo
[8] be canc.
[9] when I] repeated
[10] þe ablatiui case canc.